

***AutoVue***  
***Web Version 19.3***  
***User's Manual***

**Copyright © 1999, 2008, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.**

Portions of this software Copyright 1996-2007 Glyph & Cog, LLC.

Portions of this software Copyright Unisearch Ltd, Australia.

Portions of this software are owned by Siemens PLM © 1986-2008. All rights reserved.

This software uses ACIS® software by Spatial Technology Inc. ACIS® Copyright © 1994-1999 Spatial Technology Inc. All rights reserved.

Oracle is a registered trademark of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws.

Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this software or related documentation is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, the following notice is applicable:

**U.S. GOVERNMENT RIGHTS**

Programs, software, databases, and related documentation and technical data delivered to U.S. Government customers are "commercial computer software" or "commercial technical data" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, the use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation shall be subject to the restrictions and license terms set forth in the applicable Government contract, and, to the extent applicable by the terms of the Government contract, the additional rights set forth in FAR 52.227-19, Commercial Computer Software License (December 2007). Oracle USA, Inc., 500 Oracle Parkway, Redwood City, CA 94065.

This software is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications which may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy and other measures to ensure the safe use of this software. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software in dangerous applications.

This software and documentation may provide access to or information on content, products and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third party content, products and services. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third party content, products or services.

---

# Contents

<b>INTRODUCTION .....</b>	<b>15</b>
<b>Oracle AutoVue.....</b>	<b>15</b>
<b>Marking Up Documents .....</b>	<b>15</b>
<b>FILE VERSIONS INFORMATION .....</b>	<b>17</b>
<b>Viewing File Versions .....</b>	<b>17</b>
<b>Exporting File Versions .....</b>	<b>17</b>
<b>AUTOVUE GRAPHICAL USER INTERFACE.....</b>	<b>18</b>
<b>Menu Bar .....</b>	<b>18</b>
<b>Toolbars .....</b>	<b>19</b>
AutoVue Toolbar .....	19
Markup Properties Toolbar .....	19
Markup Entity Toolbar.....	19
<b>Navigation Panel .....</b>	<b>21</b>
Bookmarks Tab .....	21
Components Tab .....	22
Nets Tab .....	23
Models Tab and Model Tree .....	23
Views Tab .....	24
<b>Markup Navigation Tree.....</b>	<b>25</b>
<b>Status Bar .....</b>	<b>25</b>
<b>Quick Menus.....</b>	<b>26</b>
<b>OPENING FILES .....</b>	<b>27</b>
<b>Opening a Local File.....</b>	<b>27</b>
<b>Opening a URL .....</b>	<b>27</b>
<b>Opening a File from the Server .....</b>	<b>27</b>
<b>Archive Files .....</b>	<b>28</b>
<b>Streaming File .....</b>	<b>28</b>
<b>Viewing File Properties .....</b>	<b>28</b>
<b>WORKING WITH 2D FILES .....</b>	<b>31</b>
<b>Searching Text.....</b>	<b>31</b>
<b>2D Viewing Options .....</b>	<b>32</b>
Using the Magnify Glass.....	34
Using the Pan and Zoom Window .....	34
Using the Magnify Window.....	35
Selecting Views.....	35

Specifying a View Point.....	36
<b>Working with 2D Vector Files .....</b>	<b>36</b>
Manipulating 2D Vector Files.....	36
Analyzing 2D Vector Files.....	40
Comparing 2D Files .....	41
Drawing Information.....	42
<b>Measuring in 2D Files .....</b>	<b>44</b>
2D Vector Snapping Modes.....	45
Distance in non-Vector Files.....	45
Distance in Vector Files .....	46
Calibrating Distance.....	46
Area in non-Vector Files .....	47
Area in Vector Files .....	47
Angle in non-Vector Files.....	48
Angle in Vector Files .....	49
Angle in non-Vector Files.....	49
Arc in non-Vector Files.....	50
Arc in Vector Files .....	50
Calibrating an Arc.....	51
<b>WORKING WITH EDA FILES .....</b>	<b>53</b>
<b>Navigation Panel .....</b>	<b>53</b>
<b>Components Tab .....</b>	<b>54</b>
<b>Nets Tab .....</b>	<b>55</b>
<b>Bookmarks Tab.....</b>	<b>55</b>
<b>Customizing the Navigation Panel .....</b>	<b>55</b>
<b>Selecting Entities .....</b>	<b>56</b>
From the Navigation Panel.....	56
From the Workspace .....	56
From the Entity Search Dialog Box .....	56
<b>Filtering Entity Types.....</b>	<b>57</b>
<b>Zooming to a Selected Entity .....</b>	<b>57</b>
<b>Entity Properties .....</b>	<b>58</b>
<b>Viewing the Properties of an Entity .....</b>	<b>59</b>
Showing Net Connectivity .....	59
Displaying the Entity Properties of a Net .....	60
Showing Net Instances.....	60

---

<b>Navigating Design Hierarchy</b> .....	<b>61</b>
Navigating using Descend Hierarchy.....	61
Navigating using Ascend Hierarchy .....	61
<b>Layers</b> .....	<b>62</b>
Physical and Logical Layers Sections.....	63
Changing the Order of Layers.....	64
Modifying Layer Visibility .....	64
Changing Layer Color.....	66
Sorting Logical Layers.....	67
<b>Layer Sets</b> .....	<b>67</b>
Viewing Layer Sets.....	67
Creating User-Defined Layer Sets .....	68
Deleting User-Defined Layer Sets .....	69
Saving User-Defined Layer Sets with Markups.....	69
<b>Manipulating EDA Views</b> .....	<b>70</b>
<b>3D View</b> .....	<b>70</b>
<b>Cross Probing</b> .....	<b>70</b>
Cross Probing Between Two or More EDA Files.....	70
Cross Probing Between 2D and 3D Views of the Same File....	72
Showing the Net Connectivity when Cross Probing.....	73
Zooming when Cross Probing.....	73
<b>Comparing a PCB with Artwork</b> .....	<b>73</b>
<b>Generating a Bill of Material</b> .....	<b>74</b>
<b>Design Verification</b> .....	<b>75</b>
Design Rule Checks .....	76
Verifying a Design .....	78
Exporting the Design Verification Results .....	79
<b>Searching Using Entity Search</b> .....	<b>80</b>
Performing an Entity Type-based Search .....	81
Performing an Attribute-based Search .....	82
<b>Measuring in EDA Files</b> .....	<b>83</b>
Measuring Distance.....	84
Calibrating Distance.....	85
Measuring Minimum Distance.....	85
Measuring Area.....	86
Measuring an Angle .....	87
Measuring an Arc.....	87

Calibrating an Arc .....	88
<b>EDA Terms and Definitions</b> .....	<b>89</b>
<b>WORKING WITH 3D FILES</b> .....	<b>99</b>
<b>Models Tab</b> .....	<b>99</b>
<b>Views Tab</b> .....	<b>100</b>
<b>Bookmarks Tab</b> .....	<b>101</b>
<b>Global Axes</b> .....	<b>101</b>
<b>Selecting Model Parts</b> .....	<b>101</b>
Select Model Parts from the Workspace .....	102
Selecting All Identical Parts of a Model .....	102
<b>Re-Centering</b> .....	<b>102</b>
Re-Centering a Model to a Selected Model Part .....	103
Re-Center All .....	103
Re-Centering a Model to an Entity .....	103
<b>Model Tree</b> .....	<b>104</b>
Expanding/Collapsing the Model Tree .....	104
Missing XRef Notification Icon .....	105
Selecting Model Parts from the Model Tree .....	105
Hiding Model Parts .....	105
<b>Creating 3D Mockups</b> .....	<b>106</b>
Deleting Models from a Mockup .....	106
<b>Converting 3D Models to Other Formats</b> .....	<b>107</b>
Conversion Options .....	107
Converting a 3D Model .....	109
<b>Manipulating Views</b> .....	<b>109</b>
<b>Display Attributes</b> .....	<b>112</b>
Render Modes .....	112
Changing the Visibility .....	113
Changing Model Color .....	114
Adjusting the Transparency .....	114
<b>Light Settings</b> .....	<b>114</b>
Setting Ambient Lighting .....	115
Setting Directional Lighting .....	115
Adding a New Light Source .....	116
Changing the Light Properties .....	116
Removing a Light Source .....	116

---

<b>3D Views</b> .....	<b>117</b>
Default View .....	117
Setting Standard or Camera Views .....	117
Setting Native Views.....	117
Creating a User-Defined View.....	118
Displaying the Perspective Projection of a 3D Model.....	119
Viewing a Model from a Particular Viewpoint.....	119
Layers.....	119
<b>Entity Properties</b> .....	<b>120</b>
Viewing Attributes .....	120
Viewing Mass Properties .....	121
Viewing Extents.....	123
<b>PMI Entities</b> .....	<b>123</b>
PMI Filtering.....	124
Aligning to a PMI Entity.....	124
Go to a Displayed PMI Entity.....	125
PMI Configuration Entities .....	125
PMI Hyperlinks.....	126
<b>Manipulate Mode</b> .....	<b>126</b>
Panning a Model Along the X, Y and Z-Axis.....	126
Rotating a Model Along the X, Y and Z-Axis.....	127
Scaling a Model Along the X, Y and Z-Axis.....	127
<b>Part Alignment</b> .....	<b>128</b>
Part Alignment Constraints .....	129
Aligning Model Parts .....	129
<b>Transformation</b> .....	<b>131</b>
Transforming a Model Using Illustration Buttons .....	132
Transforming a Model by Setting Values .....	135
Resetting the Transformation of a 3D Model .....	136
<b>Sectioning</b> .....	<b>136</b>
Section Plane Options .....	137
Cut Options .....	137
Defining the Section Plane and Cut-through .....	138
<b>Exploding</b> .....	<b>138</b>
Explode Options.....	139
Exploding a 3D Model.....	139
Saving an Exploded View of a 3D Model .....	140

<b>User-Defined Coordinate Systems</b> .....	<b>141</b>
Position Options.....	141
Orientation Options.....	142
Defining a User Coordinate System.....	143
Modifying a User-Defined Coordinate System.....	144
Activating a Coordinate System.....	145
Deleting a User Coordinate System.....	145
<b>Interference Checks</b> .....	<b>145</b>
Interference Check Options.....	145
Performing an Interference Check.....	146
Interference Check Results Options.....	147
<b>Comparing 3D Files</b> .....	<b>148</b>
Comparing Entity Sets.....	150
<b>Generating a Bill of Material</b> .....	<b>151</b>
<b>Entity Search</b> .....	<b>152</b>
Performing a Search.....	154
Performing an Attribute-based Search.....	156
Performing an Advanced 3D Search.....	157
Saving Search Results.....	159
<b>Measuring in 3D Files</b> .....	<b>159</b>
3D Snapping Modes.....	160
Measuring Distance.....	160
Calibrating Distance.....	161
Measuring Minimum Distance.....	162
Measuring an Angle.....	163
Measuring an Arc.....	163
Calibrating an Arc.....	164
Measuring Vertex Coordinates.....	165
Measuring the Length of an Edge.....	165
Measuring Face Surface.....	166
<b>CONFIGURING AUTOVUE</b> .....	<b>167</b>
<b>General Options</b> .....	<b>167</b>
Configuring Options for CAD Files.....	167
Raster Files.....	168
Rendering.....	168
Resources.....	168
Configuring Paths.....	169

---

Measurement .....	170
Configuring the Base Font for Text Files .....	171
<b>Configuring AutoVue for 2D Files .....</b>	<b>171</b>
Snap Settings .....	171
Configuring Colors .....	171
<b>Configuring AutoVue for 3D Files .....</b>	<b>172</b>
Rendering .....	172
Dynamic Rendering .....	173
Frame Rate .....	173
Model .....	173
PMI Filtering .....	175
Configuring Colors .....	175
Configuring Background .....	177
Miscellaneous .....	177
<b>Configuring AutoVue for EDA Files .....</b>	<b>178</b>
Customizing Selections .....	178
Displaying Tooltips .....	179
Modifying 3D View .....	179
Synchronizing Layers when Comparing Files .....	180
Configuring Zoom Behavior when Cross Probing .....	180
Modifying Colors .....	180
<b>Configuring Background Colors for Graphic Files .....</b>	<b>181</b>
<b>Configuring Background Colors for Desktop Office .....</b>	<b>182</b>
<b>MARKUPS .....</b>	<b>183</b>
<b>Markup Navigation Tree .....</b>	<b>184</b>
<b>Filtering Markups .....</b>	<b>185</b>
<b>Working with Markup Files .....</b>	<b>186</b>
Saved States .....	186
Creating a Markup File .....	186
Entering Markup Information .....	187
Saving a New Markup File .....	187
Opening Markup Files .....	187
Saving an Existing Markup File .....	188
Importing a Markup File .....	188
Exporting a Markup File .....	189
Setting the Active Markup File .....	189
Changing the Active Markup File .....	190

<b>Working with Markup Layers.....</b>	<b>190</b>
Creating a Markup Layer .....	191
Setting the Active Markup Layer .....	191
Changing the Color of a Markup Layer .....	191
Renaming a Markup Layer.....	192
Toggling between Markup Layers .....	192
Deleting a Markup Layer .....	193
Moving a Markup Entity to Another Layer .....	193
<b>Consolidating Markup Files.....</b>	<b>194</b>
<b>Marking up 2D and 3D Files.....</b>	<b>194</b>
Adding an Attachment .....	196
Opening an Attachment.....	196
Editing an Attachment.....	197
Adding a Hyperlink.....	197
Creating a Hyperlink.....	197
Opening a Hyperlink .....	198
Editing a Hyperlink.....	198
Adding Signoff Entities.....	199
Creating an Intellistamp .....	200
Adding a Stamp.....	205
<b>2D-Specific Markups .....</b>	<b>207</b>
2D Markup Entities .....	207
Adding a Freestyle Entity.....	210
Adding a Leader.....	211
Aligning a Line Segment to the Vertical or Horizontal Axes.....	212
Creating 2D non-Vector Markup Measure Entities .....	212
Creating 2D Vector Markup Measure Entities.....	217
Creating EDA Markup Measure Entities .....	224
Adding Text .....	232
Adding a Note .....	233
Nesting Markup Entities .....	233
<b>3D-Specific Markups .....</b>	<b>234</b>
3D Markup Entities .....	234
Creating 3D Markup Measure Entities .....	236
Adding Text .....	242
Attaching a Note .....	244
Nesting Markup Entities .....	244

<b>Working with Markup Entities .....</b>	<b>245</b>
Go To a Markup Entity .....	245
Selecting Markup Entities .....	246
Moving a Markup Entity .....	246
Transforming Markup Entities .....	246
Hiding Markup Entities .....	247
Grouping and Ungrouping Markup Entities .....	247
Deleting Markup Entities .....	248
<b>Formatting Markup Entity Properties .....</b>	<b>248</b>
Changing Line Color .....	249
Changing Line Style .....	249
Changing Line Thickness .....	250
Changing Arrow Style .....	250
Changing Fill Type .....	251
Changing Fill Color .....	251
Assigning a Markup Entity the Same Color as the Layer .....	252
Changing Font .....	253
Changing Measurement Units and Symbols .....	253
Using the Markup Entity Properties Dialog Box .....	254
<b>PRINTING .....</b>	<b>259</b>
<b>Print Options .....</b>	<b>259</b>
Configuring the Print Options .....	262
<b>Print Margins .....</b>	<b>262</b>
Setting the Margins .....	262
<b>Headers/Footers .....</b>	<b>263</b>
Adding a Header and Footer .....	264
<b>Watermarks .....</b>	<b>265</b>
Adding a Watermark .....	265
<b>Assigning Pen Settings .....</b>	<b>266</b>
Creating a New Pen Setting .....	267
Deleting a Pen Setting .....	267
<b>Partial Preview of a File .....</b>	<b>267</b>
<b>Previewing a File Before Printing .....</b>	<b>268</b>
<b>Printing a File .....</b>	<b>268</b>
<b>Batch Printing .....</b>	<b>269</b>
<b>CONVERSION .....</b>	<b>270</b>
<b>Conversion Options .....</b>	<b>270</b>

PDF .....	271
X and Y .....	272
Converting a File .....	272
Changing the Pen Settings .....	273
<b>AUTOVUE MOBILE .....</b>	<b>275</b>
Creating a Mobile Pack .....	275
Viewing Mobile Packs .....	279
Creating Markup Files .....	280
Defining Markup Policy .....	281
Updating from Mobile Pack .....	285
<b>REAL-TIME COLLABORATION .....</b>	<b>287</b>
Collaboration User Tree .....	287
The Host .....	287
The Controller .....	288
Lock .....	288
Observer .....	288
Open a File .....	289
Pointer .....	289
Session Information .....	289
Session Markup .....	289
Show Tracker .....	290
<b>Collaboration Session .....</b>	<b>290</b>
Initiating a Collaboration Session .....	290
Changing a User's Layer Color of a Session .....	291
Adding New Users to a Session .....	291
Opening a Markup While Initiating a Session .....	292
Opening a Markup During a Session .....	292
Joining a Session .....	293
Inviting Users During a Session .....	293
Removing Users from a Session .....	294
Assigning a Host During a Session .....	294
Passing Control of a Session to Another User .....	294
Saving a Session Markup .....	294
Closing a Session .....	295
Requesting Control of a Session .....	295
Tracking Changes .....	295
Unlocking a View .....	295

---

Locking a View .....	296
Viewing Session Information.....	296
Leaving a Session.....	296
<b>Chat Window.....</b>	<b>297</b>
Sending a Message to Selected Users .....	297
Sending a Message to All Users.....	298
<b>FEEDBACK .....</b>	<b>299</b>



# Introduction

Oracle's AutoVue suite of enterprise visualization solutions provides native document viewing, markup and real-time collaboration capabilities that enable Web-based document review on hundreds of native document types, including 2D/3D CAD, EDA, Office and graphic formats.

AutoVue enterprise visualization solutions address the challenge of accessing, reviewing and collaborating on documents, both internally and with globally dispersed teams and partners, in a secure and reliable manner without compromising security or precision. Improved team productivity, reduced errors, and accelerated innovation and time to market are just a few of the business benefits organizations can expect to achieve.

The following User Guide explores AutoVue's key capabilities and is designed to help you get the most out of AutoVue's extensive functionality.

## Oracle AutoVue

**Oracle AutoVue** is a viewing and markup application that has been developed for both business and technical users.

AutoVue is capable of displaying hundreds of file formats without the authoring application. Supported file types include Text, Office, Graphics, EDA, 2D Engineering, and 3D Models. Even contents of archive files can viewed in AutoVue. Moreover, when you view a file, you do not need to specify the file type. AutoVue automatically detects the type of file you are requesting to view, even if a file has an incorrect extension.

## Marking Up Documents

AutoVue has the ability to create markups for all its readable file formats without the document's authoring application. AutoVue creates markups for different formats without modifying the original file.

You can attach comments, notes, and drawings to any file you display in AutoVue. This is called “marking up a file”, commonly known as annotating or redlining. A **markup** is an object or entity that you attach to a file. All markups are saved in a separate file called a **Markup** or a **Markup file**. When you display a file with its markups, the markups are overlaid as a layer on top of the drawing.

AutoVue provides a variety of flexible, user-friendly entities. To name a few, there are circles, clouds, polygons, and leaders. You can also attach text to entities, insert a note for longer comments, add attachments, or add a stamp such as a company logo. In addition, you can create measurement markup entities and hyperlinks that link between the current file and other associated files or applications.

---

# File Versions Information

The About dialog box displays AutoVue version and build information. You can also view the version, build number, and build date of DLLs that are shipped with AutoVue. You can also export this information into a text file.

## Viewing File Versions

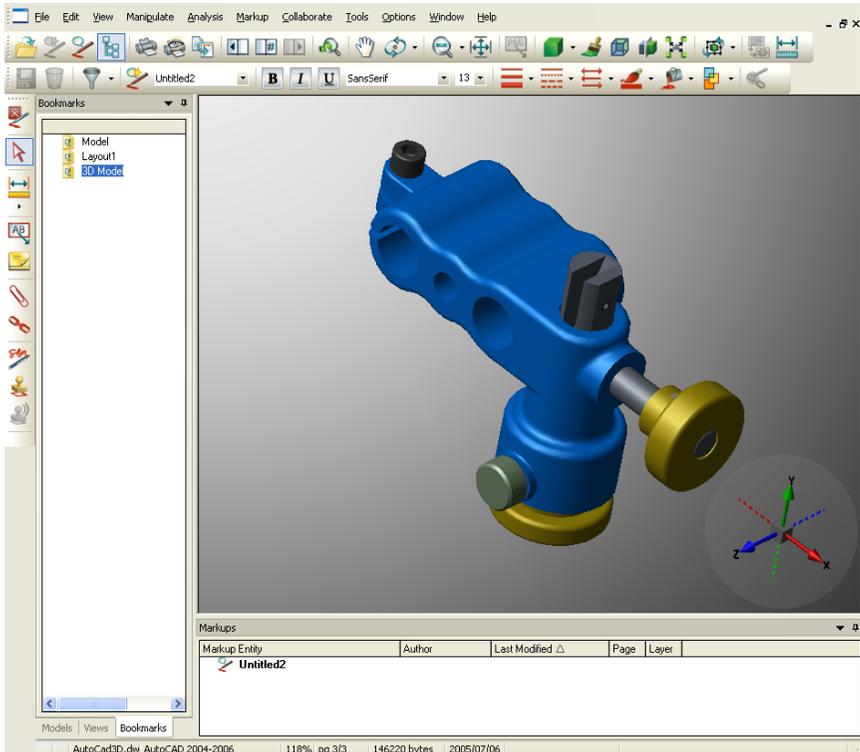
- 1 From the **Help** menu, select **About**.  
The About dialog box appears.
- 2 Click **Version Info**.  
The File Versions dialog box appears listing file names, versions, and build dates.
- 3 When you are finished viewing the file version information, click **Close**.

## Exporting File Versions

- 1 From the **Help** menu, select **About**.  
The About dialog box appears.
- 2 Click **Version Info**.  
The File Versions dialog box appears listing file names, versions, and build dates.
- 3 Click **Export**.  
The Export dialog box appears.
- 4 Navigate and select the directory to which you want to export the list.
- 5 Enter a file name with the extension **.txt** (the default name is *fverinfo.txt*).  
**Note:** The list can only be exported to a text file.
- 6 Click **Save**.  
The list is exported to the specified file.

# AutoVue Graphical User Interface

This section introduces you to the basics of working with AutoVue's graphical user interface (GUI). The following image displays the AutoVue GUI for a 3D drawing:



## Menu Bar

The **menu bar** is the main access to all the menu commands. The selection of commands changes according to the tasks being accomplished by AutoVue.

# Toolbars

AutoVue has three toolbars: **AutoVue toolbar**, **Markup Properties toolbar**, and **Markup Entity toolbar**.

## AutoVue Toolbar

The AutoVue toolbar displays below the menu bar when you open AutoVue. It is the default toolbar and includes the most commonly used functions when viewing a file—open a file, create a new markup, print, zoom, and many others. Depending on the file that is opened, the toolbar buttons will change. For example, the following image shows the AutoVue toolbar when a 3D file is open:



## Markup Properties Toolbar

The Markup Properties toolbar displays below the AutoVue toolbar when you enter Markup mode. It includes the available property and formatting options for the markup entities—save markups, change font, fill type, line style, and many others. The following image shows the default Markup Properties toolbar:



**See Also** *Markups*

## Markup Entity Toolbar

The Markup Entity toolbar displays on the left side of the AutoVue window when you enter Markup mode. It includes all the available markup entities for the opened file. Depending on the file that is opened, the toolbar buttons will change.

For example, the following image shows the Markup Entity toolbar when a 3D file is open:



**See Also** *Markups*

# Navigation Panel

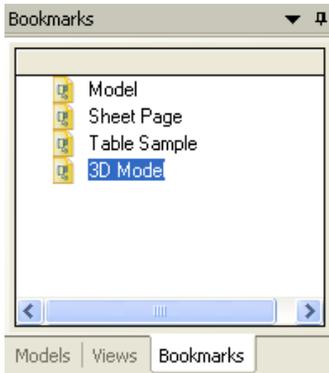
The **Navigation Panel** is displayed on the left-hand side of the AutoVue workspace. Depending on the type of file that is open in AutoVue, the Bookmarks, Components, Models, Nets, or Views tabs will display in the panel.

**See Also** *Working with EDA Files*

*Working with 3D Files*

## Bookmarks Tab

The Bookmarks tab includes links to specific views (Draft views, 2D plans) or other files with information related to the drawing. Additionally, with the Bookmarks tab, you can also browse through different chapters of PDFs, Excel worksheets, and different pages of a multi-page 2D drawing.



## Components Tab

The Components tab lists component instances and the associated pins.

**Note:** The Components tab displays only for EDA drawings.

RefDes	Compon...	Qty
C345	CAP-0402	2
C344	CAP-0402	1
C343	CAP-0402	1
C342	CAP-0402	1
C360	CAP-0402	1
C341	CAP-0402	1

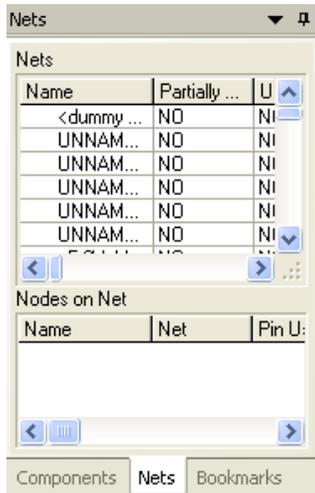
  

Name	Net	Pin U:
C341.1	+3.3VDC	UNSF
C341.2	GND	UNSF

## Nets Tab

The Nets tab lists nets and associated net nodes (pins connected to a net).

**Note:** The Nets tab displays only for EDA drawings.

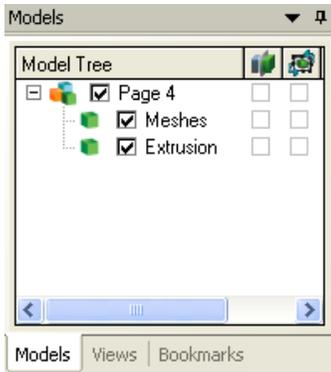


## Models Tab and Model Tree

The **Models** tab includes the Model Tree. The tree displays the model's hierarchy, inter-relation of different parts, assemblies, bodies, and missing XRef

notifications. With the tree, you can select different parts and modify their attributes such as color, visibility, render mode or transformation.

**Note:** The Models tab displays only for 3D drawings.

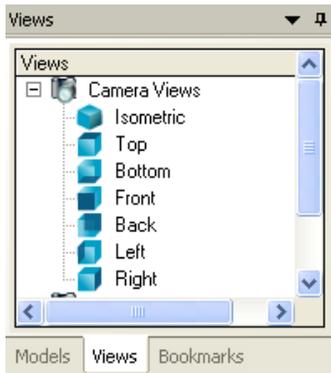


**See Also** *Models Tab*  
*Model Tree*

## Views Tab

The Views tab lists all the standard, native, and user-defined views. You can switch to a standard, native, or user-defined view, as well as add or delete user-defined views.

**Note:** The Views tab displays only for 3D drawings.



**See Also** *Views Tab*

# Markup Navigation Tree

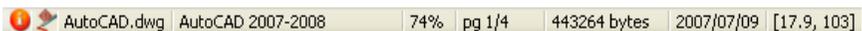
The Markup Navigation Tree displays when you enter Markup mode. It displays a hierarchy tree of markup entities or comments created by users. For example, the following image shows the tree with three line entities:

Markups					
Markup Entity	Author	Last Modified $\Delta$	Page	Layer	
<b>Untitled2</b>					
Text	JohnDoe	04/09/2008 11:51:06 AM	1	0	
Leader	JohnDoe	04/09/2008 11:51:08 AM	1	0	
b1b	JohnDoe	04/09/2008 11:51:22 AM	1	0	
Highlight	JohnDoe	04/09/2008 11:51:24 AM	1	0	
Box	JohnDoe	04/09/2008 11:51:29 AM	1	0	
Line	JohnDoe	04/09/2008 11:51:31 AM	1	0	

See Also [Markup Navigation Tree](#)

## Status Bar

In both View mode and Markup mode, there is a **status bar** located at the bottom of the main window. The fields displayed from left to right on the status bar are: marker, current active filename, file type, zoom factor, current page and total number of pages, current active file size, file creation date, and cursor's coordinate position. The following image shows the status bar:



There are two markers that may be present on the Status bar: the **Markup**

**Indicator** icon  indicates associated markups, and the **Resource** icon  indicate missing resources.

The Markup Indicator indicates that the current active file has associated

markups. While in View mode, click the **Markup Indicator** icon  to view the Markup Files dialog box, then select a Markup file or group of Markup files to open.

The Resource icon indicates that some main resources required to properly read the current active file are not available. To identify the missing resources, click the **Resource** icon to display the Properties dialog box.

## Quick Menus

One of the quickest ways to access options is through **Quick Menus** or context-sensitive shortcut menus. These are the menus you see when you right-click in the workspace, Markup Navigation Tree, and Model Tree. The available Quick Menu options depend on the location where you right-click.

# Opening Files

You can open base files and Markup files from the **File** menu and **Markup** menu, respectively. Additionally, you can open a file from the current active directory or from another directory, or manually specify the file to open by entering the URL.

## Opening a Local File

- 1 From the **File** menu, select **Open Local File**.  
The File Open dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Open Local File** .

- 2 Browse to locate the file that you want to open.
- 3 Click **Open**.  
The file appears in the AutoVue workspace.

## Opening a URL

You can open a file by specifying the URL.

- 1 From the **File** menu, select **Open URL**.  
The File Open dialog box appears.
- 2 In the **File Name** field, enter the **URL HTTP** or **FTP** of the path, or click **Browse** to locate the file that you want to open.
- 3 Click **OK**.  
The file appears in the AutoVue workspace.

## Opening a File from the Server

- 1 From the **File** menu, select **Open from Server** from the AutoVue main menu.  
The File Open dialog box appears.  
**Note:** The **Open from Server** option is available in the **File** menu only if you have access to files on the server. Refer to the *Installation and Administration Manual* for information on setting up server directories using `VueServer.ini`.
- 2 Browse the directory to locate the file that you want to open.
- 3 Click **Open**.  
The file appears in the AutoVue workspace.

## Archive Files

The full archive file directory displays in the AutoVue window. It is not necessary to decompress the file. Double-click a file to display it within AutoVue. If you would like to markup an archive file, the file must be accessible for AutoVue in a format other than archive.

## Streaming File

AutoVue generates a streaming file when a native file is opened for the first time. The streaming file contains display information for the native file and is quickly accessed by AutoVue. When AutoVue accesses the file again, it loads the display from the streaming file instead of the native file. As a result, the loading time of the display decreases.

If the native file changes, the streaming file is invalid. In this case, AutoVue opens the display from the native file and generates a new streaming file.

## Viewing File Properties

You can access the file properties from the **File** menu. The Properties dialog box provides information specific to the current active file, such as filename, file size, date of creation, and file type. The file properties that you can view are:

---

Property	Description
File	Information specific to the current active file, such as filename, file size, date of creation, file type, and x, y & z dimensions.
Resource Information	Resources specific to the current active file, such as text font, shape file, line style, and external reference files.
Native	Custom properties for file types, such as last person who saved the file, signature verification, and author comments.

---

**Note:** The file properties can vary depending on the file format viewed.

- 1 From the **File** menu, select **Properties**.  
The Properties dialog box appears.
- 2 To view file properties, click the **File Properties** tab.  
To view resource information, click the **Resource Information** tab.

- To view native properties, click the **Native Properties** tab.
- 3 Click **OK** to close the Properties dialog box.



# Working With 2D Files

AutoVue provides easy access to entity information and displays color-coded comparative data for 2D drawings. You can instantly change how the current active file is displayed. You can also modify AutoVue to suit your needs and preferences through a broad range of configuration options.

## Searching Text

You can perform a text search on 2D vector and text-based documents.

**Note:** You cannot perform a text search on raster files.

AutoVue provides search options that you can use to customize a search. These options are:

---

Option	Description
Match Whole Word Only	Match a complete word.
Match Case	Search for a word or text string with specific capitalization.
Up	Search backward in the document.
Down	Search forward in the document.

---

- 1 From the **Edit** menu, select **Find Text**.  
The Find dialog box appears.
- 2 Enter the word or phrase that you want to find in the **Find What** field.  
**Note:** If you are searching in a vector file, select a text string from the list.
- 3 You can refine your search by selecting **Match Whole Word Only** or **Match Case**.
- 4 Click **Find Next**.  
AutoVue highlights the text and zooms into the text area.
- 5 Click **Close** to close the Find dialog box.

## 2D Viewing Options

From the **View** menu, you can change how the active file is displayed in the workspace. For example, you can rotate a file's orientation clockwise, counterclockwise, or flip a file's orientation along the horizontal or vertical axis. You can access these options from the **View** menu. The options are:

Menu	Sub-Menu	Description
Zoom	Zoom Box	Click and drag to draw a box around an object that you want to enlarge to fill the window.  From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click  or right-click in workspace and select from pop-up menu.
	Zoom In	Zoom in by a factor of 2.  From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click  .
	Zoom Out	Zoom out by a factor of 2.  From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click  .
	Zoom Previous	Reverts to the previous zoom level.  From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click  . <b>Note:</b> You can also right-click the workspace and select <b>Zoom - Previous</b> .
	Full Resolution	Display the file at full resolution.  From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click  .
	Fit	Horizontal
Vertical		Fit the image vertically in the active window. The horizontal dimensions of the image are zoomed proportionally but may be too large or small for the window.

Menu	Sub-Menu	Description
	Both	<p>AutoVue finds the best fit for the current file with respect to both its vertical and horizontal dimensions.</p> <p>From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click .</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You can also right-click the workspace and select <b>Zoom - Fit</b>.</p>
Magnify Glass		<p>Magnify an area of the file that is specified by the cursor location.</p> <p><b>See <i>Using the Magnify Glass</i></b></p>
Magnify Window		<p>Magnify a selected area of a file and displays it in the Magnify Window.</p> <p><b>See <i>Using the Magnify Window</i></b></p>
Pan and Zoom Window		<p>Display a close-up view of a particular area of a file while maintaining a view of the entire file.</p> <p>From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click .</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Pan and Zoom Window</b> option is disabled for text-based documents and spreadsheets.</p> <p><b>See <i>Using the Pan and Zoom Window</i></b></p>
Pan		<p>Click and drag to move the drawing. To exit right-click.</p> <p>From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click .</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p>
<b>Note:</b>		<b>Note:</b> The Rotate option is disabled for text-based documents and spreadsheets.
Rotate	Rotate Clockwise	<p>Rotate the file 90 degrees clockwise.</p> <p>From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click .</p>
	Rotate Counter Clockwise	<p>Rotate the file 90 degrees counter clockwise.</p> <p>From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click .</p>

Menu	Sub-Menu	Description
Flip	Horizontal Axis	Flip the drawing on its horizontal axis. From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click  .
	Vertical Axis	Flip the drawing on its vertical axis. From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click  .
Page	Next	Go to the next page of a multi-page file. From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click  .
	Previous	Go to the previous page of a multi-page file. From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click  .
	Page Number	Go to the specified page of a multi-page file. From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click  .

## Using the Magnify Glass

The **Magnify Glass** view option displays the magnified area at the cursor location. You can view the details of a selected area of a file while maintaining a full view of the file.

- 1 From the **View** menu, select **Magnify Glass**.
- 2 Move the cursor to the area that you want to magnify.
- 3 Click and hold the left mouse button.  
The magnified area appears in the Magnify Glass.  
**Note:** To view different areas of the file, click and drag the mouse.
- 4 Right-click to exit Magnify Glass view.

## Using the Pan and Zoom Window

The **Pan and Zoom Window** view option allows a close-up view of a particular area of a file while maintaining a full view of the file. The Pan and Zoom Window displays a miniature version of the file and has a movable box frame on top of the miniature to indicate the area of the file displayed in the AutoVue workspace.

**Note:** The Pan and Zoom Window option is disabled for text-based documents and spreadsheets.

- 1 From the **View** menu, select **Pan and Zoom Window**.  
The Pan and Zoom Window appears displaying a full view of the file.  
**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Pan and Zoom Window** .
- 2 From the **Options** menu, select **Dynamic** to view the changes in “real time”.
- 3 To view a close-up of a specific area of the file in the AutoVue workspace, minimize the frame box by clicking and dragging the frame handles.  
To view a different area of the file in the AutoVue workspace, click and drag the frame box to the area that you want to view.  
**Note:** If you perform a zoom function in the AutoVue workspace, the area displayed in the workspace is highlighted by the frame box in the Pan and Zoom Window.
- 4 From the **Pan and Zoom** menu, select **Exit** to close the window.  
The last view performed remains in the AutoVue workspace.

## Using the Magnify Window

The **Magnify Window** option displays the magnified area in a window that updates dynamically. You can click and drag the window to any location on your screen, view the details of a select portion of the displayed file while maintaining the display of the full file.

- 1 From the **View** menu, select **Magnify Window**.  
The Magnify Window appears.
- 2 Move the cursor to the area that you want to magnify in the current active file.
- 3 Click once.  
The area appears magnified in the Magnify Window.
- 4 Right-click to exit the Magnify Window.

## Selecting Views

The **Views** option allows you to access different named views of a file.

- 1 From the **View** menu, select **Views**.  
The Select a Named View dialog box appears.
- 2 From the list, select the view that you want to display.
- 3 Click **OK**.

The selected view is displayed.

**Note:** To return to the default view, select **Default View**.

## Specifying a View Point

The **View Point** option allows you to render a drawing from a selected viewpoint.

- 1 From the **View** menu, select **View Points**.  
The View Point dialog box appears.
- 2 Enter the **X**, **Y** and **Z** coordinates for the view point with which you want to render the drawing.
- 3 Click **OK**.  
The drawing is displayed from the selected view point.

## Working with 2D Vector Files

In addition to all the features that are available for generic 2D files, AutoVue provides the ability to access entity information, access views saved in the drawing, and the ability to “intelligent snap” when performing measurements.

AutoVue references various sources to obtain all data required to completely and accurately display vector files. These sources can be internal to the file—like layers, blocks, and overlays—or external reference files (XRefs) that are located outside the file.

## Manipulating 2D Vector Files

The **Manipulate** menu option allows you to manipulate how the current active file is displayed. For example, you can select which layers, blocks, and external reference files (XRefs) to display.

The **Manipulate** menu options are:

Menu	Sub-menu	Description
Visibility Control	Layers	Select and display different layers of a drawing. From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click  . See <i>Layers</i>

Menu	Sub-menu	Description
	Blocks	Select and display a block from a drawing. From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click  . <b>See <i>Blocks</i></b>
	XRefs	Select the XRefs to display in the drawing. <b>See <i>XRefs</i></b>
Overlays		Select an overlay to modify. <b>See <i>Modifying an Overlay</i></b>

## Layers

Use this option to configure the layers to display of the current active file.

- 1 From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visibility Control**, and then select **Layers**.

The Select the Layers to Display dialog box appears listing the layers and layer visibility for the current active file.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Layers** .

- 2 To sort the list of layers in the dialog box, click **Name** to sort alphabetically or numerically, or click **Status** to sort by visibility.
- 3 Select the check box beside the layers that you want to set visible.  
Deselect the check box beside the layers that you want to hide.
- 4 Click **OK**.  
The selected layers are displayed.

## Blocks

Use this option to select a block to display from the current active file.

- 1 From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visibility Control**, and then select **Blocks**.

The Select a Block to Display dialog box appears listing the blocks for the current active file.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Blocks** .

- 2 From the list, select the block that you want to display.
- 3 Click **OK**.

The selected block is displayed.

- 4 To return to the default display, select **Default View**.

## XRefs

AutoVue references various sources to obtain all the data required to completely and correctly display files. These sources can be internal to the file, like layers and blocks. External reference files or Xrefs are located outside the file.

Use the **XRefs** option to display the external references of the current active file.

**Note:** For AutoVue to locate a resource file, the **XREFPATHS** must point to the directory or directories where the resource files exist. For more information, refer to the *Installation and Administration Manual*.

- 1 From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visibility Controls**, and then select **XRefs**.

The Select the External References to Display dialog box appears listing the external reference files associated with the current active file.

- 2 Select the check box beside the **XRefs** that you want to display.  
Clear the check box beside the **XRefs** that you want to hide.
- 3 Click **OK**.

The selected **XRefs** are displayed.

## Displaying Details About Missing Resources

The Resource icon  appears to the left of the AutoVue status bar if a file is missing resources. These missing resources can be XRefs, text fonts, linestyles, or shape files.

- 1 Click the Resource icon  on the AutoVue status bar.  
The Properties dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the **File** menu, you can also select **Properties**.

- 2 Click the **Resource Information** tab to display details about missing resource information required to properly display this file.

A green check mark  indicates the resources that AutoVue is able to access.

A red  indicates the external reference files or components that are not accessible.

- 3 Click **OK** to close the Properties dialog box.

**See Also** *Missing XRef Notification Icon*

## Adding an Overlay

When working with 2D files, you can overlay other files over the current active file. You can also adjust an overlay, move an overlay, and scale an overlay by defining the X and Y coordinates and the scaling factor.

**Note:** When working with a raster file, it should be used as the base file because raster formats are opaque and would hide files underneath them.

- 1 Open the file that you want to use as the base file for the overlay.
- 2 From the **File** menu, select **Import File as Overlay**.  
The Overlays dialog box appears.
- 3 Click **Add**.  
The Please Select an Overlay File dialog box appears.
- 4 Select a file to overlay and then click **Open**.
- 5 To add a another file, repeat steps 3 through 4.
- 6 When done, click **OK**.  
The base file is displayed with the selected overlay files on top of it.

## Modifying an Overlay

- 1 From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Overlays**.  
The Modify Overlay dialog box appears.
- 2 Select the overlay that you want to modify.
- 3 Click the **Action** that you want to apply to the overlay.
  - Click **Move** if you want to move the overlay.  
Click a point on the base file where you want to set the lower left corner of the overlay. Click another point where you want to set the upper right corner of the overlay.

**Note:** As you select the point to define the position of the upper right corner, you can resize the destination box.

- Click **Scale** if you want to resize the overlay.  
Enter the XOffset and YOffset coordinates and/or the Scale Factor.

**Note:** XOffset and YOffset are relative to the base drawing and all options are displayed at their current values.

- Click **Warp** to adjust the overlay.  
Click a point on the overlay and drag the cursor to where you want the overlay starting point. Click another point and drag the cursor to where you want the overlay to end.

**Note:** The overlay's size is scaled to accommodate the origin and destination points you defined.

- 4 Click **OK**.  
The changes are applied to the selected overlay.  
**Note:** To modify other overlays, repeat steps 2 to 4.

## Removing an Overlay

- 1 From the **File** menu, select **Import File as Overlay**.  
The Overlays dialog box appears.
- 2 Select the overlay that you want to remove.
- 3 Click **Remove**.  
The overlay is removed from the list.
- 4 Click **OK**.  
The overlay is removed from the display.

## Analyzing 2D Vector Files

With the analysis functionality, you can measure entities, compare two files, or view drawing information. These options are available under the **Analysis** menu. The following table lists all the options from the Analysis menu:

Menu	Sub-menu	Description
Measure		Measure the distance, area, angle, and arc of an entity. From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click  . <b>See <i>Measuring in 2D Files</i></b>
Compare		Compare two files. <b>See <i>Comparing 2D Files</i></b>
Show Drawing Information	Select Single Entity	Scale or translate a file in order to compare files accurately. <b>See <i>Viewing Details of a Single Entity</i></b>
	List Tags/Attributes	List block attributes and tags. <b>See <i>Viewing Tags/Attributes</i></b>

Menu	Sub-menu	Description
	Entity Information	View information of a set of entities. <b>See <i>Viewing Information for a Set of Entities</i></b>

## Comparing 2D Files

AutoVue provides the ability to visually compare two files and display color-coded comparative data. When you compare two files, AutoVue displays three windows, the first containing the original file, the second containing the file you compared the original against, and the third containing the comparison results.

In the Comparison Result window you can specify whether you want to display only the additions, deletions or unchanged, or any combination of the three. To access these options, right-click in any window and select an option from the pop-up menu.

The comparison results are displayed in different colors to differentiate the results of the file comparison. The comparison options and corresponding colors are:

Option	Color	Description
View Additions	Green	Indicates that something has been added.
View Deletions	Red	Indicates that something has been deleted.
View Unchanged	Blue	Indicates that there is no change.

- 1 View the base file in AutoVue.
- 2 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Compare**.  
The File Open dialog appears.
- 3 Enter the file name or click **Browse** to select the file that you want to compare with the current active file.
- 4 Click **OK**.  
AutoVue displays three windows, the first displaying the original file, the second displaying the compare file and the third displaying the comparison results.  
**Note:** If you apply a change from the **View** menu, all three windows display the synchronized change.

- 5 To access the Compare options, right-click in any of the windows. A pop-up menu appears displaying the Compare options.  
**Note:** To maximize any of the windows, click the  button on the title bar of the window that you want to maximize. To minimize, click the  button. To restore the window, click the  button.
- 6 When comparing AutoCAD files, you can view a file without viewports. To do so, from the **View** menu, select **View Without Viewports**.
- 7 To exit Compare mode, from the **File** menu, select **Exit Compare**. The original file appears in the workspace.  
**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Exit Compare**  .  
**See Also** *Specifying Scale and Offset for a Compare File*

## Specifying Scale and Offset for a Compare File

You can scale or translate a file in order to compare files accurately. With the **Scale and Offset** option you can modify the coordinates (**XOffset** and **YOffset**) or enter a scaling factor for the second file.

**Note:** **XOffset** and **YOffset** are relative to the base drawing and all options are displayed at their current values.

- 1 From the **View** menu, select **Scale and Offset** while in Compare mode. The Scale and Offset dialog box appears.
- 2 Enter the required values for the **Scale Options: XOffset, YOffset and Scale**.
- 3 Click **Apply**.  
The scaling/offset modifications are applied to the file in the second window.
- 4 Click **OK** to close the Scale and Offset dialog box.

## Drawing Information

**Note:** This feature is currently not supported with AutoVue Server running on Unix Platforms.

The **Drawing Information** option is available with AutoCAD and MicroStation drawings, and is accessed from **Analysis** menu in both **View** and **Markup** modes. The Drawing Information options available are: **Select Single Entity**, **List Tags/Attributes** and **Entity Information**.

## Viewing Details of a Single Entity

**Note:** This feature is currently not supported with AutoVue Server running on Unix Platforms.

- 1 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Show Drawing Information**, and then select **Select Single Entity**.
- 2 Click the entity for which you want to view information.  
The Get Entity Info dialog box appears displaying the information for the selected entity.  
The **XData** button appears if additional information exists for that entity.  
Click **XData** to view the information.  
**Note:** If you did not select an entity, a message appears informing you that no entities were found and prompts you to select again.
- 3 Click **OK** to close the Get Entity Info dialog box.

## Viewing Information for a Set of Entities

**Note:** This feature is currently not supported with AutoVue Server running on Unix Platforms.

The **Entity Information** option allows you to view information of a set of entities contained in a specific area of a file.

- 1 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Show Drawing Information**, and then select **Entity Information**.
- 2 Click and drag to draw a box around an area for which you want to view entity information for the list of entities contained inside the area.  
The List Entities dialog box appears displaying the information of all the selected entities.  
**Note:** If there are no entities within the selected area, a message appears informing you that no entities were found and prompts you to select again.
- 3 Click **OK** to close the List Entities dialog box.

## Viewing Tags/Attributes

**Note:** This feature is currently not supported with AutoVue Server running on Unix Platforms.

- 1 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Show Drawing Information**, and then select **List Tags/Attributes**.
- 2 Click in the area of the file for which you want to view information on block attributes and tags.

The Block Attributes dialog box appears displaying the attributes/tags for the selected entity.

**Note:** If there are no entities within the selected box, a message appears informing you that no entities were found and prompts you to select again.

- 3 Click **OK** to close the Block Attributes dialog box.

## Measuring in 2D Files

AutoVue provides the ability to perform measurements in 2D files. Measurement options vary between vector and non-vector files.

For vector files, AutoVue provides the option to “snap” to fixed points on the drawing.

### See *2D Vector Snapping Modes*

For non-vector files, the Snapping Modes option is disabled. However, you can free snap to any point on the drawing.

AutoVue provides several measure options that you can choose from. You can access the measure options from **Analysis** menu and selecting **Measure**, or from the AutoVue toolbar, click **Measure** .

The measure options are:

Name	Description
Distance	Measure the distance between two points. <b>See <i>Distance in non-Vector Files</i></b> <b><i>Distance in Vector Files</i></b>
Area	Measure selected area. <b>See <i>Area in non-Vector Files</i></b> <b><i>Area in Vector Files</i></b>
Angle	Measure the angle between selected points. <b>See <i>Angle in non-Vector Files</i></b> <b><i>Angle in Vector Files</i></b>
Arc	Measure an arc entity. <b>See <i>Arc in non-Vector Files</i></b> <b><i>Arc in Vector Files</i></b>

## 2D Vector Snapping Modes

The **snapping modes** available allow you to click to precise geometrical points on a drawing. For example, if you select **Snap to end-point** and you move the cursor over an end-point of a line, the end-point will be highlighted by a snap box.

The snapping modes allow you to snap to the mid, center and end-points of an entity:

Button	Snap to	Description
	End-point	Geometric snap mode where a snap box appears when moving the cursor near a linear component's end point.
	Mid-point	Geometric snap mode where a snap box appears when moving the cursor near the halfway point of a linear component.
	Center-point	Geometric snap mode where a snap box appears when moving the cursor near the center of an elliptical component.
	Free snap	Allow snapping at any point on the drawing.

## Distance in non-Vector Files

Use the **Distance** option to measure the distance between two specific points.

- 1 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.  
The Measurement dialog box appears displaying the measurement options.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .

- 2 Click the **Distance** tab.
- 3 In the Measure Distance Units list, select a unit of measurement.

**Note:** If you want to measure the distance along a path, select the **Cumulative** check box.

- 4 Click a point on the drawing to define the starting point.
- 5 Click another point on the drawing to define the end point.

**Note:** If you selected **Cumulative**, continue clicking points along the path that you want to measure.

- 6 Right-click to complete the measurement.  
The points are joined by a line. The measured distance, **Delta-X**, and **Delta-Y** appear in their respective fields in **Distance** tab.  
**Note:** Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
- 7 Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog box.

## Distance in Vector Files

Use the **Distance** option to measure the distance between two specific points.

- 1 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.  
The Measurement dialog box appears.  
**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also **Measure**  .
- 2 Click the **Distance** tab.
- 3 Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.  
To select all snapping modes click **All On**. To clear all snapping modes click **All Off**.  
**See 2D Vector Snapping Modes**
- 4 From the Measured Distance Units list, select the units of measurement.  
**Note:** If you want to measure the distance along a path, select **Cumulative**.
- 5 Click a point on the drawing to define the starting point.
- 6 Click another point on the drawing to define the end point.  
**Note:** If you selected **Cumulative**, continue clicking points along the path that you want to measure.
- 7 Right-click to complete the measurement.  
The points are joined by a line. The Measured Distance, Delta-X, and Delta-Y appear in the Measurement dialog box.  
**Note:** Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
- 8 Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog box.

## Calibrating Distance

- 1 Measure distance between two points or measure cumulative distance.  
**See *Distance in non-Vector Files***  
***Distance in Vector Files***
- 2 From the **Distance** tab, click **Calibrate**.  
The Distance Calibration dialog box appears displaying the measured distance

- 3 From the Measured Distance list, select the unit to which you want to calibrate the distance.
- 4 Select **Calibrate to** and enter a value if you want to calibrate the distance to a value.  
Select **Set Factor** and enter a value if you want to calibrate the distance by a factor.
- 5 Click **OK**.  
The calibration result appears in the Measurement dialog box.
- 6 Click **Close** to close the **Distance** tab.

## Area in non-Vector Files

Use the **Area** option to measure the area and perimeter of a region.

- 1 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.  
The Measurement dialog box appears displaying the measurement options.  
**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .
- 2 Click the **Area** tab.
- 3 In the Area Units list, select a unit of measurement in which to measure the area of the region.  
In the Perimeter Units list, select a unit of measurement in which to measure the perimeter of the region.  
**Note:** In the Net Area Result group, select **Add** to cumulate a net area result of different areas, select **Subtract** to subtract an area from the net area result, and select **Clear** to clear the **Net Area Result** field.
- 4 Click a point on the drawing to define the starting point.
- 5 Continue clicking points on the drawing to define the region you want to measure.  
Each point is joined by a line. The area and perimeter measurements appear in their respective fields in the **Area** tab.
- 6 Right-click to complete the measurement.  
**Note:** Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
- 7 Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog box.

## Area in Vector Files

Use the **Area** option to measure the area and perimeter of a region.

- 1 From the Analysis menu, select **Measure**.  
The Measurement dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .

- 2 Click the **Area** tab.
- 3 Select **Between Points** if you want to measure the area between points on a drawing.

**Note:** Snapping modes are displayed.

- 4 Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.  
To select all snapping modes click **All On**. To clear all snapping modes click **All Off**.

### **See 2D Vector Snapping Modes**

- 5 Select **Shape** if you want to measure the area of a predefined shape on the drawing.
  - 6 From the Measured Area Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the area.
  - 7 From the Perimeter Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the perimeter.
  - 8 To cumulate a **Net Area Result** of different areas, click **Add**.  
To subtract an area from the **Net Area Result**, click **Subtract**.  
Select **Clear** to clear the **Net Area Result**.
  - 9 If you selected **Between Points**, click points on the drawing to define the area.  
Each point is joined by a line. The area and perimeter measurements appear in the Measurement dialog box.
  - 10 Right-click to complete the measurement.
  - 11 If you selected **Shape**, click the edge of the predefined shape.  
The shape is highlighted and the area and perimeter measurements appear in the Measurement dialog box.
- Note:** Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
- 12 Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog box.

## Angle in non-Vector Files

Use the **Angle** option to measure the angle between points on a drawing.

- 1 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.  
The Measurement dialog box appears displaying the measurement options.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .

- 2 Click the **Angle** tab.
- 3 Select a unit of measurement from the Units list.
- 4 Click points on the drawing to define the angle you want to measure.

Angle arms appear with an arc connecting them. The angle measurement appears in the **Angle** tab.

**Note:** Click **Reset** to take another measurement.

- 5 Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog box.

## Angle in Vector Files

Use the **Angle** option to measure the angle between points on a drawing.

- 1 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.  
The Measurement dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .

- 2 Click the **Angle** tab.
- 3 Select **From 3 Points** if you want to measure the angle between three points. Snapping modes are displayed.
- 4 Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.  
To select all snapping modes click **All On**. To deselect all snapping modes click **All Off**.

**See 2D Vector Snapping Modes**

- 5 Select **Between 2 lines** if you want to measure the angle between two lines.
- 6 From the Measured Angle Units list, select the unit.
- 7 If you selected **From 3 Points**, click three points on the drawing to define the angle.
- 8 If you selected **Between 2 Lines**, click two lines on the drawing to define the angle.

Angle arms appear with an arc connecting them. The angle measurement appears in the Measurement dialog box.

**Note:** Click **Reset** to take another measurement.

- 9 Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog box.

## Angle in non-Vector Files

Use the **Angle** option to measure the angle between points on a drawing.

- 1 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.  
The Measurement dialog box appears displaying the measurement options.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .

- 2 Click the **Angle** tab.
- 3 Select a unit of measurement from the Units list.

- Click points on the drawing to define the angle you want to measure. Angle arms appear with an arc connecting them. The angle measurement appears in the **Angle** tab.  
**Note:** Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
- Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog box.

## Arc in non-Vector Files

Use the **Arc** option to define an arc in the drawing and calculate its arc center, radius, diameter, and arc length.

- From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.  
The Measurement dialog box appears displaying the measurement options.  
**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .
- Click the **Arc** tab.
- In the Arc Info section, select a unit of measurement from the Length list in which to measure the length of the arc.
- In the Measured Angle section, select a unit of measurement from the **Sweep Units** list measure the angle of the arc.
- Click points on the drawing to define the arc.  
The points are joined by an arc. The measurements for center point coordinates, radius, diameter, arc length, start and end of angle, and sweep appear in the **Arc** tab.  
**Note:** Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
- Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog box.

## Arc in Vector Files

Use the **Arc** option to define an arc in the drawing and measure its radius, center and diameter.

- From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.  
The Measurement dialog box appears.  
**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .
- Click the **Arc** tab.
- Select **From 3 Points** if you want to measure the arc between three points. Snapping modes are displayed.  
Click the snapping modes that you want to select as the points for the measurement.  
**See 2D Vector Snapping Modes**

**Note:** To select all snapping modes click **All On**. To clear all snapping modes click **All Off**.

- 4 Select **Arc Entity** if you want to measure a predefined arc.
  - 5 From the Arc Info list, select the unit in which you want to measure the distance.
  - 6 From the Measure Angle Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the angle.
  - 7 If you selected **From 3 Points**, click three points on the drawing to define the arc.  
The points are joined by an arc. The measurements for center point coordinates, radius, diameter, arc length, start and end of angle and sweep appear in the Measurement dialog box.
  - 8 If you selected **Arc Entity**, click the edge of the arc that you want to measure.  
The arc is highlighted. The measurements for center point coordinates, radius, diameter, arc length, start and end of angle and sweep appear in the Measurement dialog box.
- Note:** Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
- 9 Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog box.

## Calibrating an Arc

- 1 Measure an arc in the drawing.  
**See *Arc in non-Vector Files***  
***Arc in Vector Files***
- 2 From the **Arc** tab, click **Calibrate**.  
The Radius Calibration dialog box appears displaying the measured distance.
- 3 From the **Measured Radius** list, select a unit of measurement to which you want to calibrate the distance.
- 4 Click **Calibrate to** and enter a value if you want to calibrate to a value. Click **Set Factor** and enter a value if you want to calibrate by a factor.
- 5 Click **OK**.  
The calibration results appear in the **Arc** tab.
- 6 Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog box.



---

# Working with EDA Files

In addition to all the features that are available for generic 2D files, AutoVue also provides intelligent querying for EDA files; you can create/modify layer sets, generate BOM, verify EDA designs, perform intelligent measurements, analyze nets and components, and much more. For information on the available features for EDA files, refer to the following sections.

## Navigation Panel

The **Navigation Panel** is displayed on the left-hand side of the AutoVue workspace when you view an EDA drawing. It allows you to navigate through a list of component instances, nets, and the associated pins and net nodes (pins connected to a net) present in the current schematic drawing or PCB design.

The columns displayed in the Navigation Panel are determined by the profile of the entity types in the current schematic drawing or Printed Circuit Board (PCB) design. Lists can be sorted in order to group similar component instances.

You can also use the Navigation Panel to select (highlight) a component or entity; zoom to a component or entity, and query entity information.

RefDes	Part Type	Location
U4	BQFPC6...	(29.000)
C1	CAPAE1...	(51.000)
C2	CAPC321...	(7.000)
C3	CAPC321...	(7.000)
C4	CAPC321...	(7.000)
U1	SDP63P...	(50.000)
U2	SDP63P...	(50.000)
U3	SSDP50...	(50.000)
U5	SSDP50...	(50.000)
R4	RESC16...	(7.000)
R3	RESC16...	(7.000)
R2	RESC16...	(7.000)
R1	RESC16...	(7.000)
RN1	RESCAX...	(9.000)
RN2	RESCAX...	(9.000)
RN3	RESCAX...	(9.000)
RN4	RESCAX...	(9.000)
J1	MOL-541...	(30.000)
S1	SW_SNA...	(11.000)
S2	SW_SNA...	(49.000)
J2	USBAF	(23.000)
DISPLAY1	7SEGSM	(29.000)

Name	Location	With
U5.1	(47.1500...	false
U5.2	(47.1500...	false
U5.3	(47.1500...	false
U5.4	(47.1500...	false
U5.5	(47.1500...	false
U5.6	(47.1500...	false

## Components Tab

The **Components** tab lists component instances and the associated pins. The top portion of the tab lists all the instances of the currently displayed page of the drawing. The lower portion of the tab lists the associated pins for selected instances.

When you select a component, it appears highlighted on the drawing. To select more than one component, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting. All the components you selected are highlighted. The associated pins for the selected components are displayed.

## Nets Tab

The **Nets** tab lists nets and associated net nodes (pins connected to a net). The top portion of the tab lists all the nets of the currently displayed page of the drawing. The lower portion of the tab lists the associated net nodes for the selected nets.

When you select a net, it appears highlighted on the drawing. To select more than one net, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting. You can also click and drag in the Navigation Panel list to select multiple nets. All the nets you selected are highlighted. The associated net node lists for all the nets you selected are displayed.

## Bookmarks Tab

The **Bookmarks** tab allows you to navigate between PCB and schematic pages or between the 2D and 3D view of a PCB design.

## Customizing the Navigation Panel

In the Navigation Panel, you can sort a column, change column order, or hide/show a column.

- 1 To sort a column, click the column heading.
- 2 To change the column order or to show/hide a column, right-click a column heading and select **Customize**.  
The Customize Columns dialog box appears.
- 3 To show or hide a column, select the check box beside the column or columns you want to show.  
Deselect the check box beside the column or columns you want to hide.  
**Note:** To show all columns, click **Show All**. To hide all columns, click **Hide All**.
- 4 To change the column order, select the column you want to move, then click **Move Up** to move the column up in the list or click **Move Down** to move the column down in the list.
- 5 Click **OK**.  
The changes appear in the Navigation Panel.

# Selecting Entities

Selecting an entity or entities is often the first step to many of the operations that you will perform with EDA files. You can select an entity or entities in an EDA file from the Navigation Panel or the workspace. You can also select entities from the Entity Search dialog box when you search for entities. To specify which types of entities you can or cannot select, use the Entity Filter dialog box.

Once you have selected an entity, you can zoom to it in the workspace and perform other operations with the EDA file.

## From the Navigation Panel

Click any components, nets, associated pins, or net nodes in the Navigation Panel to select them. To select more than one entity, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.

The selected entity or entities are highlighted in the workspace. If the selected entity is small, a flash box appears indicating the location of the highlighted entity in the workspace.

*See Also **Zooming to a Selected Entity***

## From the Workspace

Click an entity in the workspace to select it. To select more than one entity, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.

The selected entity or entities appear highlighted in the workspace and in the Navigation Panel. If the selected entity is small, a flash box appears indicating the location of the highlighted entity in the workspace.

You can also apply selection filters when selecting entities in the workspace.

*See **Filtering Entity Types***

**Note:** When you hover the mouse over an entity in the workspace, a tooltip with information about the entity's attributes appears. The tooltip displays whether or not you select the entity.

*See Also **Zooming to a Selected Entity***

## From the Entity Search Dialog Box

- 1 Perform an attribute-based or entity type-based search using the Entity Search dialog box.

**See *Searching Using Entity Search***

- 2 Select an entity or entities from the Entity Types list or the Attributes list of the Entity Search dialog box.

**Note:** To select more than one entity, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.

The selected entity or entities appear highlighted in the workspace and in the Navigation Panel.

**Note:** If the selected entity is too small, a flash box appears indicating the location of the highlighted entity in the workspace.

**See Also *Zooming to a Selected Entity***

## Filtering Entity Types

With the **Entity Filter** option, you can display certain entity types while hiding others, without having to hide an entire layer. For example, you might want to turn off all entities and display only the component instances.

You can also limit the types of entities you can select in the workspace.

- 1 From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visibility Control**, and then select **Entity Filter**.

The Entity Filter dialog box appears.

- 2 Under the **Visibility** column, select the check box beside the entity types you want to display in the workspace.

Deselect the check box to hide the entity types.

- 3 Under the **Selection** column, select the check box beside the entity types that you want to be able to select in the workspace.

Deselect the check box beside the entity types that you do not want to select.

**Note:** To select all entity types, select the check box in the column header.

Deselect the check box to deselect all entity types.

- 4 Click **Apply** to apply the changes.
- 5 Close **OK** to close the Entity Filter dialog box.

Only the selected entity types remain displayed in the workspace.

When you click in the workspace, only the entity types checked in the Entity Filter dialog box will be highlighted.

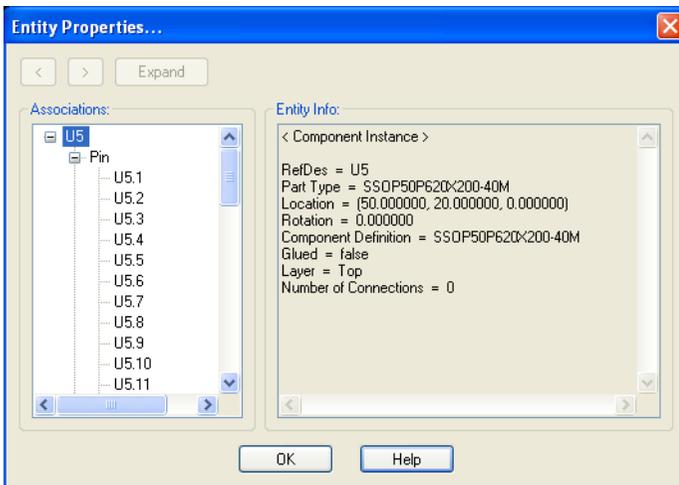
## Zooming to a Selected Entity

- 1 In the workspace or Navigation Panel select the entity, then right-click and select **Zoom Selected**.

- In the Entity Search dialog box, select the entity from the Entity Types list or the Attributes list, then right-click and select **Zoom Selected**. AutoVue zooms to the selected entity in the workspace.

## Entity Properties

The **Entity Properties** dialog box displays detailed information about any selected entity in the current schematic drawing or PCB design. To open the Entity Properties dialog box, you can double-click or right-click an entity in the workspace, Navigation Panel or Entity Search dialog box, then select **Show Entity Properties**.



On the left side of the Entity Properties dialog box, a navigation tree displays all the entities associated with the entity you selected. The entity you selected is the root of the tree, and all the associated entities (grouped by their type) are shown as its children.

The attributes of the entity display to the right of the tree under **Entity Info**. In the tree, select any associated entity to display its attributes under **Entity Info**.

You can also view entity attributes in the workspace. When you hover the mouse over an entity in the workspace, a tooltip with commonly used entity information appears. You can turn these tooltips off or on from the Configuration dialog box.

**See *Configuring AutoVue***

# Viewing the Properties of an Entity

The Entity Properties dialog box displays detailed information about any selected entity in the current schematic drawing or PCB design.

- 1 Select the entity in the workspace or from the Navigation Panel or Entity Search dialog box.

**See *Searching Using Entity Search***

- 2 Right-click and select **Show Entity Properties**.  
The Entity Properties dialog box appears displaying the selected entity and its associated entities under **Associations**, and its attributes under **Entity Info**.

**Note:** You can also double-click the entity in the workspace to view its entity information.

- 3 Select any associated entity in the tree to display its attributes under **Entity Info**.
- 4 To view all associated entities for any given entity in the tree, select the entity and click **Expand**.

**Note:** To view the entity properties for the previous entity, click the back [ < ] arrow. To return to the entity properties displayed before you clicked the back arrow, click the forward [ > ] arrow.

- 5 Click **OK** to close the Entity Properties dialog box.

## Showing Net Connectivity

You can view the net connectivity of an entity such as a pin, via, or trace with the **Show Net Connectivity** option.

**Note:** **Show Net Connectivity** is disabled when more than one entity is selected.

- 1 Select an entity such as a pin, via, or trace from the workspace or the Navigation Panel.  
The corresponding entity is highlighted in the workspace and in the Navigation Panel.
- 2 From the workspace or Navigation Panel, right-click the selected entity, and then select **Show Net Connectivity**.  
The graphical entities belonging to the connected nets are highlighted.

## Displaying the Entity Properties of a Net

You can view the properties of a net via the **Show Entity Properties** option.

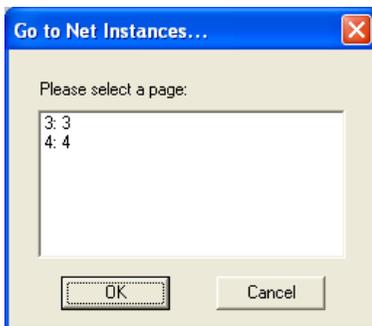
**Note:** The **Show Entity Properties** is disabled when more than one net entity is selected.

- 1 Select an entity such as a pin, via, or trace from the workspace or the Navigation Panel.  
The corresponding net is highlighted in the workspace and in the Navigation Panel.
- 2 From the workspace or Navigation Panel, right-click the selected net, and then select **Show Entity Properties**.  
The Entity Properties dialog box appears displaying the properties of the selected net.
- 3 Click **OK** to close the Entity Properties dialog box.

## Showing Net Instances

You can display the instances of a net in a multi-page file.

- 1 From the Navigation Panel, click the **Nets** tab and select the net you want to view.  
The net is highlighted in the Navigation Panel and in the workspace.
- 2 From the **View** menu, select **Go to Net Instances**, or right-click the highlighted net from the Navigation Panel or workspace and select **Go to Net Instances**.  
AutoVue highlights the instance or instances of the selected net.  
If the selected net appears on multiple pages the Go to Net Instances dialog box appears.



- 3 Select the page on which you want to view the net instance, then click **OK**.

The selected page is displayed and the instance of the selected net is highlighted.

**Note:** If there are no instances for the selected net, the option is disabled.

## Navigating Design Hierarchy

AutoVue supports navigation through the hierarchical structure of a schematic drawing. A hierarchical block in a schematic is a symbol that refers to a child schematic. With the **Descend Hierarchy** option, you can navigate to a child schematic. With the **Ascend Hierarchy** option, you can navigate from the child schematic to the parent page.

### Navigating using Descend Hierarchy

On the parent page of your schematic's design hierarchy, select any hierarchical block in the workspace or in the Navigation Panel, then right-click and select **Descend Hierarchy**.

AutoVue opens the page with the selected child schematic.

**Note:** You can also select the hierarchical block in the Entity Search dialog box, then right-click and select **Descend Hierarchy**.

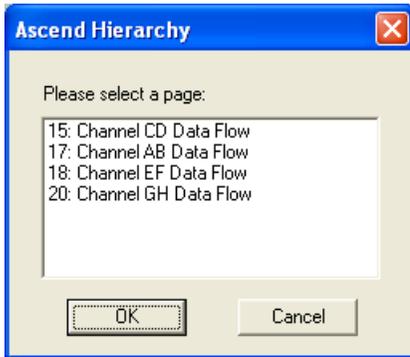
*See [Searching Using Entity Search](#)*

### Navigating using Ascend Hierarchy

On the child page of your schematic's design hierarchy, right-click an entity in the workspace or in the Navigation panel and select **Ascend Hierarchy**.

AutoVue returns to the parent page.

If you select an entity that has multiple parents, the Ascend Hierarchy dialog box appears displaying the parent pages.



Select the **Parent** page you want to go to, then click **OK**. AutoVue returns to the selected parent page.

**Note:** You can also select the entity in the Entity Search dialog box, then right-click and select **Ascend Hierarchy**.

*See Searching Using Entity Search*

## Layers

When working with EDA files, AutoVue lets you view all the physical layers and associated logical layers of the EDA drawing; you can view all layer sets for that file, or create your own. Additionally, you can manipulate certain layer attributes, such as visibility, color, and ordering. The layer settings are accessed via the **Layers** option.

**Note:** For drawings which do not contain layers, the **Layers** menu option and button are disabled.

From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visibility Control**, and then select **Layers**. The Layers dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Layers** .

The Layers dialog box has a **Physical Layers** section and a **Logical Layers** section. You can display and hide these sections by clicking **Expand**  and **Collapse** , respectively.

## Physical and Logical Layers Sections

The Logical Layers section displays the layers in the order they display in the workspace. The Physical Layers section displays the layers in the order they appear in the layer stackup when manufactured.

The Physical Layers section displays a matrix with a mapping of physical layer names to entity types. Each row in the matrix corresponds to a physical layer in the board. Each column in the matrix lets you control the visibility of an entity type, such as pin, via, or trace. The entity types that display depend on the entities available in the open file. Select a physical layer to change its visibility, layer order, and color. Select or deselect the entity type of a physical layer to affect its visibility separately from the other entities of the layer.

When you select a physical layer from the Physical Layers section, the associated logical layers are also selected in the Logical Layers section. You can also select individual logical layers from the Logical Layers section, or press the **Shift** or **Control** key to select multiple logical layers.

**Note:** One physical layer can be selected at a time.

The Logical Layers section displays a list of logical layers and the layer attribute options you can modify: visibility, order, and color.

To modify these attributes for both physical and logical layers, first select the layers you want to modify, then use the settings to make the changes you want.

When you select physical or logical layers and modify settings from the Layers dialog box, a message displays at the bottom of the dialog box to indicate your last action.

When you are satisfied with the changes, click **Apply** to make the changes in the workspace. You can also create layer sets to save your modified layer settings to reuse them later.

When you open a file, it displays all layer sets for that file. You can choose the layer set you need, or create your own.

- See *Changing the Order of Layers***
- Modifying Layer Visibility***
- Changing Layer Color***
- Sorting Logical Layers***
- Creating User-Defined Layer Sets***

## Changing the Order of Layers

You can change the order in which layers display in the workspace. Specifically, you can change the z-order of layers.

- 1 From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visibility Control**, and then select **Layers**.

The Layers dialog box opens.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Layers** .

- 2 If the Logical Layers section is not open, click **Expand** .
- 3 Select the layer or layers that you want to move. To do so, you can do one of the following:

- Select a physical layer from the Physical Layers section. Logical layers associated with the selected physical layer are also selected. When you make changes to a selected physical layer, the logical layers associated with it are also affected.
- Select one or multiple logical layers from the Logical Layers section. To select multiple logical layers, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.

- 4 Click one of the following buttons:

- Click **Bring to Front**  to move all selected layers to the front in the workspace. In the Logical Layers section, these layers move to the top of the list.
- Click **Up**  to move selected layers up one layer.
- Click **Down**  to move selected layers down one layer.

**Note:** You can also drag and drop selected logical layers in the Logical Layer section.

- 5 Click **Apply** to see the changes in the workspace. The file now displays according to the layer scheme you arranged. Also, logical layers are renumbered in the Order column of Logical Layers section.
- 6 You can now save your changes as a user-defined set.

**See *Creating User-Defined Layer Sets***

- 7 Click **Close** to close the Layers dialog box.

## Modifying Layer Visibility

Use the Layers dialog box to hide or display specific physical and logical layers in the workspace.

## Modifying Visibility for Physical Layers

- 1 From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visibility Control**, and then select **Layers**.

The Layers dialog box opens.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Layers** .

- 2 In the Physical Layers section, you can show or hide the following:
  - **All physical layers:** Click the **All** column header.
  - **One physical layer:** Select the check box to the left of the layer name.
  - You can also select a layer and click **Visibility** .
  - **One entity type for all physical layers:** Click the column header. For example, click the **Trace** column header to show or hide all trace entities of all physical layers.
  - **One entity type for one physical layer:** Click a specific check box.
- 3 Click **Apply** to view the changes in the workspace.
- 4 You can now save your changes as a user-defined set.  
**See *Creating User-Defined Layer Sets***
- 5 Click **Close** to close the Layers dialog box.

**Note:** Check boxes for physical layers can have four states: checked, unchecked, gray checked, and gray unchecked. Check boxes that are checked and gray indicate that the entities of a physical layer are neither all visible nor all hidden. Gray check boxes that you cannot select indicate that there is no entity of that type for that layer.

## Modifying Visibility for Logical Layers

- 1 From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visibility Control**, and then select **Layers**.

The Layers dialog box opens.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Layers** .

- 2 If the Logical Layers section is not open, click **Expand** .
- The Logical Layers section lets you show or hide the following:
- **One logical layer:** Select the layer's check box in the **Visibility** column .
  - **Multiple logical layers:** To select more than one layer, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting, and then click **Visibility** .

- 3 Click **Apply** to view the changes in the workspace.
- 4 You can now save your changes as a user-defined set.  
**See *Creating User-Defined Layer Sets***
- 5 Click **Close** to close the Layers dialog box.

## Changing Layer Color

You can modify the color of any physical or logical layer from the Layers dialog box.

- 1 From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visibility Control**, and then select **Layers**.  
The Layers dialog box opens.  
**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Layers** .
- 2 If necessary, click **Expand**  to open the Logical Layers section.  
Select the layer or layers for which you want to change the color.  
You can select a physical layer from the Physical Layers section; logical layers associated with the selected physical layer are also selected. You can also select individual logical layers from the Logical Layers section, or press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting to select multiple layers.
- 3 Once you have selected a layer, you can do one of the following modify its attributes:
  - Click **Modify Color** . Use this button if you want to change the color of all logical layers associated with a selected physical layer, or to change the color of many selected logical layers at the same time.
  - Double-click a square in the **Color** column  of the Logical Layers section. Use this option to change the color of individual logical layers.  
**Note:** Do not click the **Color** column heading unless you want to sort the layers in the Logical Layers section according to color.
- 4 Select the color that you want from the menu.  
The color of all selected layers changes in the **Color** column.
- 5 Click **Apply** to save the changes.  
The display updates in the workspace based on the changes you made to the layer color.
- 6 You can now save your changes as a user-defined layer set  
**See *Creating User-Defined Layer Sets***
- 7 Click **Close** to close the Layers dialog box.

## Sorting Logical Layers

You can sort the list of logical layers in the Logical Layers section by name, visibility, color, or physical layer.

- 1 From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visibility Control**, and then select **Layers**.

The Layers dialog box opens.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Layers** .

- 2 If the Logical Layers section is not open, click **Expand** .
- 3 Click the column header of an attribute.  
Layers are sorted according to the attribute header you click.

For example, clicking the **Color** column header  sorts all logical layers in the section according to their color.

**Note:** To restore the original sort order, click the **Order** column header.

## Layer Sets

A **layer set** is comprised of all the physical and logical layers in the drawing. Layer sets differ in the attributes of the different layer or layers; for example, z-order, visibility, and color. You can also define your own layer sets to control which layers you can view and print.

## Viewing Layer Sets

AutoVue lists top, bottom, and default layer sets, as well as any layer set that is stored in the file. You can choose to display any layer set you need. You can also create user-defined layer sets and display them later. To view a layer set, take the following steps:

- 1 From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visibility Control**, and then select **Layers**.

The Layers dialog box opens.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Layers** .

- 2 From the **Layer Set** list, select the layer you want to display.
- 3 Click **Apply**.  
The selected layer set displays in the workspace.
- 4 To restore the default layer set, from the Layer Set list, select **(Default)**.
- 5 Click **Close** to close the Layers dialog box.

**Note:** You can also view the layer sets from the Layers list beside the **Layers** button  on the AutoVue toolbar.

**See** *Creating User-Defined Layer Sets*  
*Deleting User-Defined Layer Sets*  
*Saving User-Defined Layer Sets with Markups*

## Creating User-Defined Layer Sets

You can define a layer set and save it for the duration of the session. The layer set you defined is added to the Layer Set list in the Layers dialog box and to the **Layers** list on the AutoVue toolbar.

By default the **Top**, **Bottom** and **Default** layer sets and any other layer sets belonging to the file are listed in the Layer Set list.

- 1 From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visibility Control**, and then select **Layers**.

The Layers dialog box opens.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Layers** .

- 2 Click **Add**.  
The Add Layer Set dialog box appears.
- 3 Enter the layer set name.
- 4 Click **OK**.  
The new layer set appears in the Layer Set list.
- 5 To modify the attributes of the new layer set, select one or more layers and change the **Visibility**, **Order**, or **Color**.

**See** *Changing the Order of Layers*  
*Modifying Layer Visibility*  
*Changing Layer Color*

- 6 Click **Apply** to save the changes and to display the new layer set in the workspace.
- 7 To define more layer sets, repeat steps 2 to 6.
- 8 Click **Close** to close the Layers dialog box.

The new layer set appears in the Layers list beside the **Layers Control** button  on the AutoVue toolbar.

**See** *Viewing Layer Sets*  
*Deleting User-Defined Layer Sets*  
*Saving User-Defined Layer Sets with Markups*

## Deleting User-Defined Layer Sets

- 1 From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visibility Control**, and then select **Layers**.

The Layers dialog box opens.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Layers** .

- 2 From the Layer Set list, select the user-defined layer set you want to delete.

**Note:** You can only delete user-defined layer sets.

- 3 Click **Delete**.

**Note:** The layer settings of the deleted layer set remain displayed on the screen until you select another layer set.

- 4 Click **Apply** to save the changes.
- 5 Click **Close** to close the Layers dialog box.

**See *Creating User-Defined Layer Sets***

***Viewing Layer Sets***

***Saving User-Defined Layer Sets with Markups***

## Saving User-Defined Layer Sets with Markups

You can save user-defined layer sets using Markup files.

- 1 Create custom layer sets.

**See *Creating User-Defined Layer Sets***

- 2 From the **Markup** menu, select **New**.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Markup** .

- 3 Create any markup entities that you need.

- 4 From the **Markup** menu, select **Save As**.

The Save Markup File As dialog box appears.

- 5 Enter the markup information and click **OK**.

The Layer sets you created are saved with the Markup file. When you reopen the file during a different session, you can view the Layer sets when you open the Markup file.

**See *Creating User-Defined Layer Sets***

***Viewing Layer Sets***

***Deleting User-Defined Layer Sets***

***Markups***

# Manipulating EDA Views

With the **View** options you can instantly manipulate how the current active file is displayed. You can rotate a file's orientation clockwise or counter-clockwise by 90 degrees, and flip a file's orientation horizontally, vertically or both simultaneously.

AutoVue provides several ways to change the view size of a selected area of a file, display different views, layers and blocks of the current active file. You can also navigate from one page to another page of a multi-page file.

*See 2D Viewing Options*

## 3D View

For some ECAD formats, AutoVue supports 3D views of PCB boards.

- 1 In the Navigation Panel, click the **Bookmarks** tab.
- 2 Select **3D View** from the navigation tree.

The 3D view of the PCB board is displayed in the workspace.

**Note:** 3D view can also be accessed from the **View** menu, selecting **Page**, and then selecting **Next**, or from the AutoVue toolbar and then clicking **Next**

**Page**  .

## Cross Probing

Cross probing is the ability to select elements in the schematic and have them mapped to the corresponding components in the layout drawings and vice versa. You can also cross probe between the 2D and 3D view of the same file.

*See **Cross Probing Between Two or More EDA Files**  
**Showing the Net Connectivity when Cross Probing**  
**Cross Probing Between 2D and 3D Views of the Same File**  
**Zooming when Cross Probing***

## Cross Probing Between Two or More EDA Files

The **Cross Probe** option lets you select entities in the schematic drawing or the PCB and AutoVue highlights what you selected in all the open files.

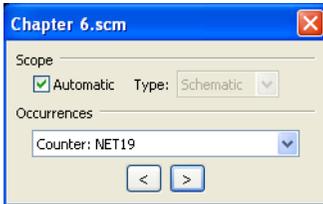
- 1 Open a file you want to cross probe.
- 2 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Cross Probe**.  
The Select files for cross-probing dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Cross Probe**  .

- 3 Click **Add File**.  
In the **File Open** dialog box that appears.
- 4 Enter the path and file name of the file you want to cross probe, or click **Browse** to locate the file, then click **OK**.
- 5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 for each additional file that you want to open.
- 6 In the Select files for cross-probing dialog box, click **OK**.  
Each file you selected appears in a new window. A dialog box appears for each new window which lets you change the view or page for each file. Each dialog box has the **Automatic** option selected by default. When the **Automatic** option is selected for each dialog box, you see different behavior depending on the files you cross probe, as follows:
  - If you cross probe a schematic and PCB, one window automatically displays a 2D PCB and the other window displays a schematic. The same is true if either file contains a PCB and a schematic. For example, if files A and B contain both a schematic and a PCB and they are cross probed, one of the files displays the schematic page and the other displays the 2D PCB.
  - If you cross probe two PCBs, one window automatically displays a 2D PCB and the other window displays a 3D PCB.
  - If you cross probe two schematics, both are set to schematic.
- 7 If necessary, resize the windows so that you can see all the open files.
- 8 To change the view of a file in a window, take the following steps:
  - a. Deselect the **Automatic** option in the dialog box for the window you want to change.
  - b. Select **Schematic**, **PCB**, or **PCB 3D View** from the **Type** list. These options are available in the Type list only when the views are present in the file.  
The view of the file changes in the window.
- 9 To switch between multiple occurrences of a selected component, take the following steps:
  - a. From the Navigation panel, select a component in one file that has multiple component occurrences in the other file.

- b. From the dialog box of the file with multiple component occurrences, select one of the components from the **Occurrence** list or click **Next**

 or **Previous**  to switch between component occurrences.



- 10 Select any entity in the schematic drawing.  
The same entity is highlighted in the PCB designs.

## Cross Probing Between 2D and 3D Views of the Same File

- 11 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Cross Probe**.  
The Select files for cross-probing dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Cross Probe** .

- 12 Click **Add File**.  
The File Open dialog box appears
- 13 Select the same file, then click **OK**.
- 14 In the Select files for cross-probing dialog box, click **OK**.  
The file appears in a new AutoVue window. The views that display in each window depend on the contents of file you are cross probing.
- 15 If the file does not contain a schematic, one window shows the 2-dimensional view of the PCB and the other shows the 3-dimensional view of the PCB.
- 16 If the file contains a schematic as well as a PCB, the schematic view displays in one window and the 2D PCB view displays in the other window. In this case, take the following steps to see the 2D and 3D views of the PCB:
- In the window's dialog, deselect the **Automatic** option.
  - Select a different view from the **Type** list. For example, you can switch between **Schematic** and **PCB 3D View**.
- 17 Resize the windows so that you can see both views of the file.
- 18 Select an entity in the 3D view.  
The same entity is highlighted in the 2D view of this file.

**Note:** You can select entities in the 2D view or 3D view of the file. The selected entities are highlighted in both open views of this file.

## Showing the Net Connectivity when Cross Probing

- 1 Select an entity or entities in any open file.
- 2 Right-click and select **Show Net Connectivity**.  
The net connectivity for the entity or entities that you selected are highlighted in all the files.

## Zooming when Cross Probing

When you are cross probing files, you can zoom in on the entities you select. Zoom in on a selected entity or entities:

- When cross probing between a schematic drawing and a PCB design.
- When cross probing between the 2D and 3D views of the same file.

### To zoom in on a selected entity:

- 1 Select an entity or entities in either one of the open files or views.  
**Note:** If you are cross probing between a schematic drawing or a PCB design, you can select entities in either file. You can also select entities in any open file when cross probing the 2D view and 3D view of the same file.
- 2 Right-click and select **Zoom Selected** from the pop-up menu.  
AutoVue zooms to the same entities in all the open files.

## Comparing a PCB with Artwork

In AutoVue, you can visually compare PCB designs or schematic drawings. In **Compare** mode for EDA files, EDA options such as Select Entity, Entity Search dialog box, and Entity Type Filter are available.

To compare a PCB with artwork:

- 1 Open the PCB file that you want to compare with artwork.
- 2 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Compare**.  
The File Open dialog appears.
- 3 Enter the path and file name or click **Browse** to select the artwork file that you want to compare with the PCB file.
- 4 Click **OK**.  
The PCB-Artwork Comparison dialog appears.

- From the list, select the PCB physical layer that represents the artwork, then click **OK**.  
AutoVue displays the selected layer in the first window, compares it with the Artwork in the second window and displays the results in the Comparison Result window.
- To exit Compare mode, from the **File** menu, select **Exit Compare**.  
The original file appears in the AutoVue workspace.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Exit Compare** .

## Generating a Bill of Material

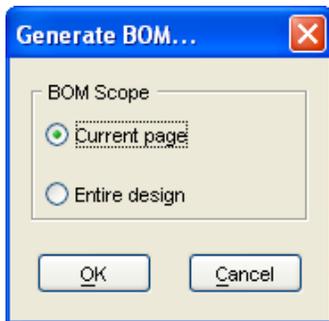
For EDA files, you can obtain a list of the components and parts required for manufacturing the item featured in the schematic drawing or PCB design.

The **Bill of Material (BOM)** report produces a count of the unique components or parts needed for manufacturing. It lists the quantity required, component name, reference designators, value (for resistors and capacitors), size, and descriptions. When determining the uniqueness of a component, the count considers only the attributes chosen for inclusion in the report output. It includes only those attributes that provide the most accurate and unique component quantities.

To generate a BOM, do the following:

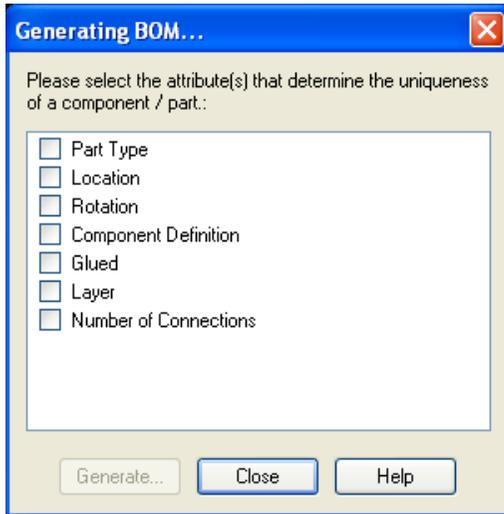
- From the **Analysis** menu, select **Generate Bill of Material**.

**Note:** If you are generating a BOM for a schematic with multiple pages, a dialog box appears prompting you to select the BOM scope: **Current page** or **Entire design**.



Click **OK** after making your selection.

**Note:** The Generating BOM dialog box appears listing the attributes of the file.



- 2 Select the attributes that you want to appear in the report
- 3 Click **Generate**.

The Bill of Material dialog box appears listing the count for each component or part possessing the attributes you selected. There are also columns displaying the values of the attributes you selected.

**Note:** To sort a column by alphanumerical or alphabetical order, click on the column heading.

- 4 To save the BOM, click **Export**.  
The Export BOM dialog box appears.
- 5 Specify the directory where you want to store the file, the file name and extension, then click **Save**.

**Note:** You can specify either **.pdx** (Product Data Exchange) or **.csv** (Common Separated Values) for the extension.

AutoVue automatically saves the results in a file with the format you specified.

- 6 Click **Close** to close the Bill of Material dialog box.

## Design Verification

Design verifications are operations that check the electrical design of a PCB against a set of rules defining physical and electrical design limitations.

Performing these checks will prevent short circuits and process errors. The types of design rules are as follows:

- **Clearances** - The minimum spacing (air gaps) allowed between two sets of entities in the design. These sets can belong to the same type of entity or to different types.
- **Electrical** - Targets certain properties of the nets
- **Manufacturing** - Targets the physical properties of a particular entity.

## Design Rule Checks

For design rule checks that have values, you can change the unit of measure and change the value of each check. The available design rule checks are:

Type	#	Design Rule Check	Description
Clearance	1	Min.Clearance (Pad > Pad)	Specify the minimum pad to pad clearance on the same physical layer. <b>Note:</b> Only the pad outline is considered.
	2	Min.Clearance (Pad > Trace)	Specify the minimum pad to trace clearance and pads on the same physical layer. <b>Note:</b> Only the pad outline is considered. Does not take into account traces connected to a pin (pad) on the same net.
	3	Min.Clearance (Trace > Trace)	Specify the minimum trace to trace clearance on the same physical layer. <b>Note:</b> Does not take into account directly connected traces.

Type	#	Design Rule Check	Description
	4	Min. Clearance (Comp > Comp)	Specify the minimum component to component clearance on the same physical layer (component top side or component bottom side). <b>Note:</b> Only the logical layer that defines the actual outline of the component is considered. <b>Note:</b> A component entity is usually made up of geometrics on different logical layers (silkscreen, keepout, and so on.), but only the logical layer that defines the actual outline of the component is considered.
Manufacturing	5	Min. Annular Ring	Specify the distance between the pad outline and the outline of its drill hole on all physical layers. <b>Note:</b> The two outlines (geometries) are part of the pin (pad) entity but on different logical layers.
	6	Min. Pad Diameter	Specify the minimum diameter of a pad. <b>Note:</b> Only applicable to rounded pads.
	8	Acute Angle (in deg.)	Specify the minimum acute angle between connected traces on the same physical layer. <b>Note:</b> Only two traces belonging to the same net should be considered.
	9	Min. Drill Hole Size	Specify the minimum diameter of the drill hole size allowed. <b>Note:</b> Only applicable to rounded pads.
	10	Max. Drill Hole Size	Specify the maximum diameter of the drill hole size allowed. <b>Note:</b> Only applicable to rounded pads.
Electrical	7	Max. Via Count	Specify the maximum via count allowed for a net.

Type	#	Design Rule Check	Description
	11	Min. Route Width	Specify the minimum route (trace) width allowed in the design.
	12	Max. Route Width	Specify the maximum route (trace) width allowed in the design.
	13	Min. Route Length	Specify the minimum route (trace) length allowed in the design.
	14	Max. Route Length	Specify the maximum route (trace) length allowed in the design.
	15	Empty Nets	Select this check box if you want to check for any nets that are not connected to any pin, via, trace and power/ground plane.
	16	Un-routed Traces	Select this check box if you want to check for any trace segment that is not connected to another trace segment, pin, via on either end.
	17	Single Connection	Select this check box if you want to check for a net connected to only one pin. <b>Exception:</b> power and ground nets.
	18	Short Circuit	Select this check box if you want to check for intersections (on the same layer) of traces that belong to different nets. <b>Note:</b> Trace entities will be divided into $n$ sets where $n$ is the number of nets in the design.
	19	Unconnected Pin	Select this check box if you want to check for any pin (pad) that is not graphically intersected with any traces on the same physical layer.

## Verifying a Design

- 1 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Verify Design**.  
The Verify Design dialog box appears.

- 2 To enable a design rule, select the associated check box in the Design Rules section of the dialog box.  
To disable a design rule, deselect the check box.  
**Note:** You can sort the design rules by clicking the column headings for **Enabled**, **Description**, or **Value**.
- 3 To add a value to the selected design rule, double-click in corresponding row of the **Value** column and enter a value.  
**Note:** The selected design rule must be enabled to be able to add a value.
- 4 In the **Maximum Violations** field, enter the maximum number of results you want to display in the Results list.
- 5 From the **Distance Units** list, select the unit you want to use as the unit of measure.
- 6 Click **Verify**.  
**Note:** The **Verify** button changes to **Stop**. To stop the Design Verification process at any point, click **Stop**.  
When the process is complete, the total number of errors found during the Design Verification process, up to the maximum number specified in the **Maximum Violation** field appear in the Results list.
- 7 To view the description of a violation result, select the violation from the Results list.  
The description appears in the **Description** field. The description includes information such as the type of violation, the location where it occurs (x- and y-coordinates), the component or entity it affects, and the actual value measured.  
**Note:** When you select a violation result, AutoVue zooms to the entity or set of entities that were affected and highlights them on the drawing.
- 8 Continue to select violation results to view its description.  
**Note:** Click **Reset** to restart a new check.
- 9 Click **Close** to close the Verify Design dialog box.

## Exporting the Design Verification Results

You can export the design verification results into a text file.

- 1 Verify a design.  
**See *Verifying a Design***
- 2 In the Verify Design dialog box, click **Export**.  
The Export Results dialog box appears.
- 3 Navigate and select the directory where you want to export the results.
- 4 Enter a file name.

- 5 Click **Save**.  
AutoVue saves the design verification results in a **.txt** (text) or a **.csv** (Common Separated Values) file listing each violation result and its description.
- 6 Click **Close** to close the Verify Design dialog box.

## Searching Using Entity Search

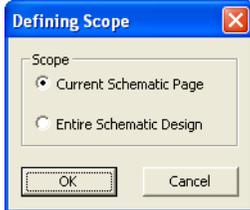
You can search for an entity in a schematic drawing or a PCB design using the **Entity Search** option. To filter entities, apply attribute, or entity type filters as search criteria. You can select entities from the results list to highlight them in the workspace and the Navigation Panel. You can also export the search results to a **.txt** file.

**Note:** If the selected entity is small, a flash box appears indicating the location of the highlighted entity in the workspace.

To open the Entity Search dialog box, from the **Edit** menu, select **Entity Search**.

From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Entity Search** .

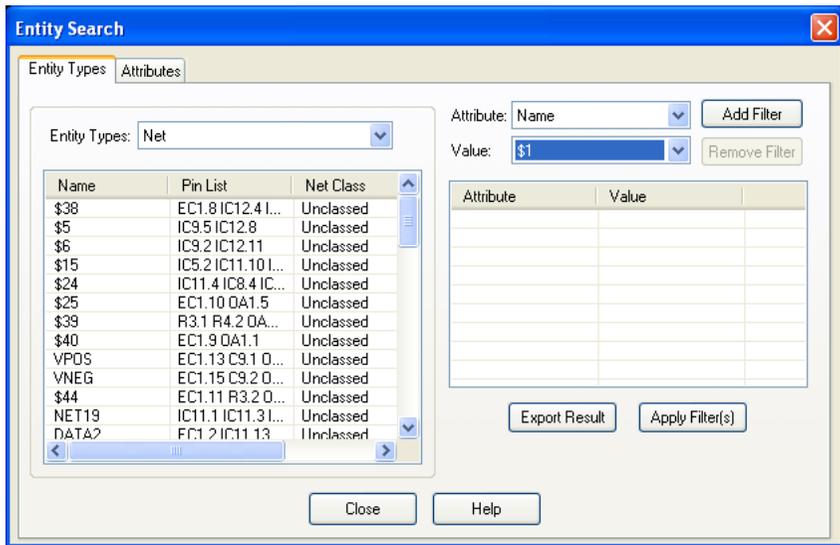
If your schematic has multiple pages, a Defining Scope dialog box appears.



Select **Current Schematic Page** to browse through only one page. Select **Entire Schematic Design** to browse through all schematic pages.

Click **OK** after making your selection.

The Entity Search dialog box appears.



## Performing an Entity Type-based Search

- 1 From the **Edit** menu, select **Entity Search**.  
The Entity Search dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Entity Search** .

- 2 Click the **Entity Types** tab.
- 3 From the Entity Types list, select an entity type.  
A list of attributes for the selected entity type appear.

**Note:** To sort the list by attribute, click the attribute column heading that you want to sort by.

- 4 If you want to search by attribute, select an attribute from the Attribute list.  
If you want to search by value, select a value from the Value list.
- 5 Click **Add Filter**.

The selected attribute and its corresponding value appear in the list.

- 6 Repeat steps 4 and 5 until you have all the filters you want.

- 7 Click **Apply Filter(s)**.

A list of entities matching the search criteria appear showing the column headers for the entity's available attributes.

**Note:** To remove a filter, select the line in the list containing the attribute and value you do not want to use as a filter, then click **Remove Filter**.

- 8 To save the results, click **Export Result**.  
The Save As dialog box appears.
- 9 Specify the file name and the directory where you want to store the file, then click **Save**.  
AutoVue saves the results in a **.csv** (Comma Separated Values) file.
- 10 To view the properties of an entity, select the entity from the Entity Types list or the Attributes list, then right-click and select **Show Entity Properties**.  
The Entities Properties dialog box appears and displays the properties for the selected entity.
- 11 To show the net connectivity, click the **Attributes** tab, select the entity from the list, then right-click and select **Show Net Connectivity**.  
The net connectivity for the selected entity is highlighted in the workspace.
- 12 Click **Close** to close the Entity Search dialog box.

## Performing an Attribute-based Search

- 1 From the **Edit** menu, select **Entity Search**.  
The Entity Search dialog box appears.  
**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Entity Search** .
- 2 Click the **Attributes** tab.
- 3 From the Attributes list, select an attribute.  
The Owner, Type, and Value of the selected attribute appear in the list.  
**Note:** To sort the list by Owner, Type, or Value, click the column heading that you want to sort by.
- 4 If you want to search by owner, select an owner from the Owner Filter list. If you want to search by value, select a value from the Value Filter list.  
**Note:** You can also enter an Owner Filter or Value Filter in the text box.
- 5 Click **Apply Filter(s)**.  
A list of entities matching the search criteria appear displaying the Owner, Type, and Value columns.  
**Note:** Select an item in the result list and right-click to access options like **Zoom Selected** and **Show Entity Properties**.
- 6 To save the results, click **Export Result**.  
The Save As dialog box appears.
- 7 Specify the file name and the directory where you want to store the file, then click **Save**.  
AutoVue saves the results in a **.csv** (Comma Separated Values) file.
- 8 Click **Close** to close the Entity Search dialog box.

# Measuring in EDA Files

In EDA files, you can take measurements of distances, areas, arcs, and so on. When measuring, you have the option to “snap” to geometrical or electrical points on the drawing.

From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure** to access the Measurement options.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .

The following table outlines the available measuring options:

Name	Description
Angle	Measure the angle between selected points.
Arc	Measure an arc entity.
Area	Measure a selected area.
Distance	Measure the distance between two points.
Minimum Distance	Measure the minimum distance between entities.

## EDA Snapping Modes

The **snapping modes** allow you to click to precise geometrical or electrical points. For example, when you select **Snap to Pin**, move the cursor over the pin you want to select until the pin is highlighted, then click. Highlight and click a second pin to measure the distance between them.

The snapping modes allow you to snap to the mid, center, and end-points of an entity, as well as a pin, via, and symbol. The following table outlines the available snapping modes:

Button	Snap to	Description
	End-point	Geometric snap mode where a snap box appears when moving the cursor near the component’s end point.
	Mid-point	Geometric snap mode where a snap box appears when moving the cursor near the halfway point of a linear component.

Button	Snap to	Description
	Center-point	Geometric snap mode where a snap box appears when moving the cursor near the center of an elliptical component.
	Pin	Electrical snap mode where a snap box appears when the cursor touches a pin.
	Via origin	Electrical snap mode where a snap box appears when the cursor touches a via.
	Symbol origin	Electrical snap mode where a snap box appears when the cursor touches the entire component.
	Free snap	Allows snapping at any point on the drawing.

## Measuring Distance

Use the **Distance** option to measure the distance between two specific points.

- 1 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.  
The Measurement dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .

- 2 Click the **Distance** tab.
- 3 Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.  
To select all snapping modes click **All On**.  
To deselect all snapping modes click **All Off**.

**See EDA Snapping Modes**

- 4 From the Measured Distance Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the distance.

**Note:** If you want to measure the distance along a path, select **Cumulative**.

- 5 Click a point on the drawing to define the starting point.
- 6 Click another point on the drawing to define the end point.

**Note:** If you selected **Cumulative**, continue clicking points along the path that you want to measure.

- 7 Right-click to complete the measurement.  
The points are joined by a line. The measured distance, Delta-X, Delta-Y and the “Manhattan Distance” appear in the Measurement dialog box.

**Note:** Click **Reset** to take another measurement.

- 8 Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog box.

## Calibrating Distance

- 1 Measure the distance between two points or measure cumulative distance.  
**See *Measuring Distance***
- 2 In the Measurement dialog box, click **Calibrate**.
- 3 The Distance Calibration dialog box appears displaying the measured distance.
- 4 From the Measured Dist. list, select the unit to which you want to calibrate the distance.
- 5 Select **Calibrate to** and enter a value if you want to calibrate the distance to a value.  
Select **Set Factor** and enter a value if you want to calibrate the distance by a factor.
- 6 Click **OK**.  
The calibration results appear in the Measurement dialog box.
- 7 Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog box.

## Measuring Minimum Distance

Use the **Minimum Distance** option to measure the minimum distance between entities. The available entities for snapping are nets, pins, vias, and traces.

- 1 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.  
The Measurement dialog box appears.  
  
**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure**  .
- 2 Click the **Min. Distance** tab.
- 3 Select **Set 1**  to select the entities that you want to measure from.
- 4 Select the snapping modes that you want to select as the entities for the measurement.  
**See *EDA Snapping Modes***  
**Note:** If you click **Select Nets**, you cannot select any other type of entity.
- 5 Click the first set of entities on the drawing.  
The entities are highlighted.  
**Note:** To clear the last set of entities you selected, click **Clear Set**.
- 6 Select **Set 2**  to select the entities that you want to measure to.
- 7 Click the second set of entities on the drawing.  
The entities are highlighted in a different color.

- 8 From the Measured Min. Distance Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the distance.  
**Note:** Select **Zoom to Result**, if you want to zoom into the measurement on the drawing.
- 9 Click **Compute**.  
The minimum distance from the first set of entities to the second set is highlighted by a line. The minimum measured distance, Delta-X, Delta-Y, and the Manhattan Distance appear in the Measure Min. Distance section of the dialog box.
- 10 Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog box.

## Measuring Area

Use the **Area** option to measure the area and perimeter of a region.

- 1 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.  
The Measurement dialog box appears.  
  
**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure**  .
- 2 Click the **Area** tab.
- 3 Select **Between Points** if you want to measure the area between points on a drawing. The snapping modes are displayed.  
Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.  
To select all snapping modes click **All On**.  
To deselect all snapping modes click **All Off**.  
**See EDA Snapping Modes**
- 4 Select **Shape** if you want to measure the area of a predefined shape on the drawing; the snapping modes are disabled.
- 5 From the Measured Area Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the area.
- 6 From the Perimeter Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the perimeter.
- 7 In the Net Area Result section of the dialog box, select **Add** to cumulate a net area result of different areas.  
To subtract an area from the Net Area Result, select **Subtract**.  
Select **Clear** to clear the Net Area Result.
- 8 If you selected **Between Points**, click points on the drawing to define the area.  
Each point is joined by a line. The area and perimeter measurements appear in the Measurement dialog box.

- 9 If you selected **Shape**, click the edge of the predefined shape that you want to measure.  
The shape is highlighted. The area and perimeter measurements appear in the Measurement dialog box.  
**Note:** Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
- 10 Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog box.

## Measuring an Angle

Use the **Angle** option to measure the angle between points on a drawing.

- 1 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.  
The Measurement dialog box appears.  
**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure**  .
- 2 Click the **Angle** tab.
- 3 Select **From 3 Points** if you want to measure the angle between three points.  
Snapping modes are displayed.  
Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.  
To select all snapping modes click **All On**.  
To deselect all snapping modes click **All Off**.  
**See EDA Snapping Modes**
- 4 Select **Between 2 lines** if you want to measure the angle between two lines.
- 5 From the Measured Angle Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the angle.
- 6 If you selected **From 3 Points**, click three points to define the angle.
- 7 If you selected **Between 2 Lines**, click two lines to define the angle.  
Angle arms appear with an arc connecting them. The angle measurement appears in the Measurement dialog box.  
**Note:** Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
- 8 Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog box.

## Measuring an Arc

Use the **Arc** option to define or select an arc in the drawing and measure its radius, center and diameter.

- 1 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.  
The Measurement dialog box appears.  
**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure**  .

- 2 Click the **Arc** tab.
- 3 Select **From 3 Points** if you want to measure the arc between three points. Snapping modes are displayed. Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring. To select all snapping modes click **All On**. To deselect all snapping modes click **All Off**.  
**See *EDA Snapping Modes***
- 4 Select **Arc Entity** if you want to measure a predefined arc.
- 5 From the Arc Info list, select the unit in which you want to measure the distance of the arc.
- 6 From the Measured Angle Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the angle.
- 7 If you selected **From 3 Points**, click three points to define the arc. The points are joined by an arc. The measurements for center point coordinates, radius, diameter, arc length, start and end of angle and sweep appear in the Measurement dialog box.
- 8 If you selected **Arc Entity**, click the edge of the arc that you want to measure. The arc is highlighted. The measurements for center point coordinates, radius, diameter, arc length, start and end of angle and sweep appear in the Measurement dialog box.  
**Note:** Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
- 9 Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog box.

## Calibrating an Arc

- 1 Measure an arc in the drawing.  
**See *Measuring an Arc***
- 2 In the Measurement dialog box, click **Calibrate**. The Radius Calibration dialog box appears and displays the measured distance.
- 3 From the Measured Rad. list, select the unit to which you want to calibrate the distance.
- 4 Select **Calibrate to** and enter a value if you want to calibrate to a value. Select **Set Factor** and enter a value if you want to calibrate by a factor.
- 5 Click **OK**. The calibration results appear in the Measurement dialog box.
- 6 Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog box.

---

# EDA Terms and Definitions

## Annular ring

A circular strip of conductive material that remains after a hole has been drilled through the pad of a printed circuit board.

## Anti-copper

An area within a fill zone in which copper cannot be placed.

## Aperture

An opening, similar to the aperture of a camera, that is used for photo-plotting. Apertures are available in various sizes and shapes.

## Aperture list

A text file containing the dimensions for each of the apertures used to photo-plot PCB artwork.

## Clusters

Components that are grouped according to their interrelationships and placed in close proximity on the board. This keeps the connections on the PCB short so that the board is easier to work with.

## Component

An element or a part of a PCB.

## Component density

The quantity of components on a unit area of a PCB.

## Component hole

A hole in the printed circuit board that corresponds to a pin or wire of a component. This hole serves the dual function of attaching the component to the

board and establishing the electrical connection between the pin or wire and the remainder of the board circuitry.

## Component library

A computer data file that contains the footprint patterns for a number of components.

## Component side

The uppermost or top layer of a board on which most components are placed.

## Component silkscreen

The silkscreen markings of the printed circuit board that appear on the component side. The silkscreen is applied over the solder mask.

## Component solder mask

The colored, usually translucent, coating applied to the board over the etched copper. It protects the selected areas from the soldering process.

## Connection

An unrouted, partially routed, or completely routed path between two pads. In a net with  $n$  pads, there are exactly  $n-1$  connections.

## Copper pour

A method by which a copper zone is filled with a specified pattern, with objects that cross the zone or lie within the zone being avoided.

## Copper zone

An area on a board designed to be covered by a layer of copper when manufactured. Also known as a "metal zone".

## Cross hatching

The breaking up of large conductive areas by the use of a pattern of lines and spaces in the conductive material.

## Datum

A specific location (a point) that serves as a reference to locate a PCB pattern or layer for manufacture.

## Density

On a PCB, the degree to which components are packed on the board. Generally, the density is given as the number of square inches per equivalent, i.e., a lower number indicates a more dense board.

## Discrete components

Components with three or fewer electrical connections (for example, resistors or capacitors).

## Electrical check

The process of checking the PCB to ensure that the connections they are on match those specified in the net list.

## Fill zone

A zone that defines an area to be filled with copper.

## Fine pitch

A class of surface-mount components that is characterized by pins measuring 0.025 inches or less from pad center to pad center.

## Footprint

The physical description of a component. It consists of three elements: **padstacks**, representing the pads of the component; **obstacles**, representing among other things, the physical outline of the component, silkscreens, keepouts/keepins, and assembly drawing data; and **text** documenting the footprint information (for example, the component name). You may want each project to have its own footprint library containing all the footprints used in that project.

## Ground plane

A large area on the PCB, usually an entire layer, that provides a common ground connection for all component ground pins and other ground connections.

## Heatsink

A mechanical device made of a high thermal conductivity material that dissipates heat generated by a component or assembly.

## Heuristics

A method of routing that consists of repeated attempts to apply very simple routing patterns to unrouted connections in order to complete the routing quickly and cleanly. Typically, heuristics are used for memory and short point-to-point routing.

## Hole

The area where board material must be removed by drilling or milling.

## Isolation

The clearance around a pad, track, zone, or via that defines the nearest approach allowed by conductors of another signal set.

## Jumper wire

A discrete electrical component or wire used to make electrical connections between points that have no copper etch due to board density or some other factor.

## Keepout

An area fill within which no routing is allowed.

## Land

The copper pad needed for a surface mount pin.

## Layer

One in a series of planes in a PCB design on which tracks are arranged to connect components. Vias connect tracks and zones between layers.

## Manual routing

Individual connections, in the form of traces, vertices, arcs, and so on, which are entered manually into the PCB design.

## Mounting hole

A hole used for the mechanical support of a PCB or for the mechanical attachment of components to a PCB.

## Multi-layer board

A PCB that has multiple layers, separated by dielectric material, with connectivity between layers established by vias or through-holes. This term usually refers to a board with more than two layers.

## Net

A logical construct (circuit) that originates in a schematic and is transferred to a board to describe required electrical connections. The connections may be completed by using vias, tracks, or zones.

## Net list

List of names of symbols or parts and their connection points which are logically connected in each net of a circuit. A net list can be extracted electronically on a computer from a properly prepared schematic.

## Obstacle

An outline representing an object on the board. It must be taken into account during routing, placement, or copper pour.

## Pad

On a PCB, a copper shape on one or more layers (there may be a hole and an isolation surrounding the copper) used for connecting a component pin to the PCB. The pad indicates where pins of a component are placed.

## Padstack

A numbered list of pad descriptions. Each description contains a pad definition, including layer, style, drill diameter, size, offset, and solder mask guard width.

## PCB - Printed Circuit Board

A PCB is a board made up of components affixed to a common surface and connected by copper tracks.

## Pin

The portion of a component to which an electrical connection can be made.

## Ratsnest

A number of unrouted straight-line connections between two or more pads that represent the electrical connections in the netlist. The ratsnest serves as a reminder that the pads must be connected, and that, currently, there is no track on the board to make that connection.

## Reference designator

A character string denoting the type of component and a number that is specific to that component.

## Routing

Placing conductive interconnects between components on a PCB layout. The process of turning nets into tracks.

## Schematic

A graphical description of an electrical circuit.

## Segment

The partial track that exists between two adjacent vertices or between a vertex and a pin. Sometimes the track between two pins is also called a segment, although connection is usually the more appropriate term here.

## Signal

An electrical impulse of a predetermined voltage, current, polarity, and pulse width.

## Silkscreen

Text or outlines (in ink) on the solder mask, on the top, and sometimes on the bottom of board modules. A silkscreen is used for component and identification placement on a PCB and usually includes component outlines, reference designators, polarity indicators, pin one markings, part numbers, the company name, and copyright info.

## SMT - Surface Mount Technology

PCB technology whereby the leads on the chips and components are soldered onto the surface of the board rather than inserted into it. The use of SMT results in smaller and faster printed circuit boards.

## Solder mask

A negative plot of pads with a guard band around the pads. Also, a lacquer applied to prevent solder from adhering to unwanted areas on the PCB.

## Solder paste

A pattern that serves as a template for solder paste application when the board is manufactured.

## Solder side

The PCB surface opposite the one on which most components are mounted (component side). Also, the bottom layer of the board.

## Test point

A special point of access to an electrical circuit that is used for electrical testing purposes.

## Through-hole via

A via that connects the surface layers on a PCB.

## Trace (Track)

The copper trails (electrical connection between two or more points) on the PCB and the onscreen representation of that copper.

## Venting patterns

Patterns etched in the board that allow gases formed during fabrication to escape.

## Vertex

A logical point at which a track is ended and restarted. A vertex is located at each change of direction on the track.

## Via (feed-through hole)

A hole connecting layers of a PCB. A **through-hole via** connects the surface layers of a board. On multilayer boards, a via not reaching a surface layer on one side is called a **blind via**, and a via not reaching a surface layer on either side, thus being externally invisible, is called a **buried via**.

## Viastack

A numbered list of via descriptions. Each description contains a via definition, including layer, style, drill diameter, size, offset, and solder mask guard width.

## Via stringer

The copper etch that exists between a SMT pad and a corresponding fanout via.

## Zero-length connection

An unrouted connection between layers where the end points in the connection have the same X- and Y- coordinates.

## Zone

An area on a PCB layer designated as copper or anti-copper. Copper zones may have net names, while anti-copper zones may not.



# Working with 3D Files

From AutoVue's 3D mode, you have many ways in which to manipulate the model. For example, you can select model parts to transform independently from the rest of the model, as well as modify the selected model part's visibility and attributes. 3D mode also gives you the ability to perform an entity and mass properties search, and it allows you to import 3D models into the current window and export files to other formats. Additionally, the Global Axes inform you of where the X, Y and Z axes are positioned throughout all the operations you perform in AutoVue.

The **Perspectiv**e option shows objects in three dimension with distances, planes and curved surfaces adjusted to give a sense of depth. You have lighting options where you can adjust the overall lighting surrounding a model or just its source light.

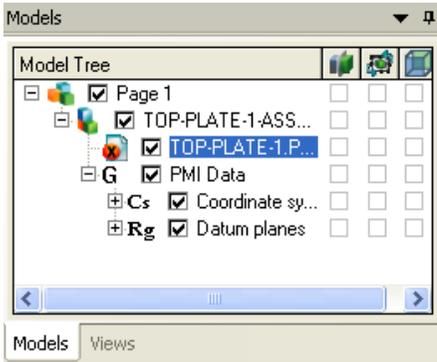
You can also customize operations to suit your needs. For example, you can create and save your own views. Define cross sections and cut-throughs of 3D models. Create a customized three-axis coordinate system that you can set as the active coordinate system for your 3D files.

There are also features like Bill of Material (BOM), Interference Checking and Product and Manufacturing Information (PMI) Filtering.

## Models Tab

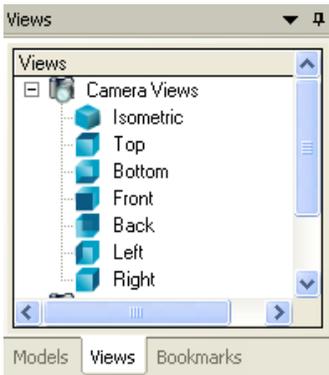
The Models tab includes the Model Tree. The tree displays the model's hierarchy, inter-relation of different parts, assemblies, bodies, and missing XRef

notifications. With the tree, you can select different parts and modify their attributes such as color, visibility, render mode or transformation.



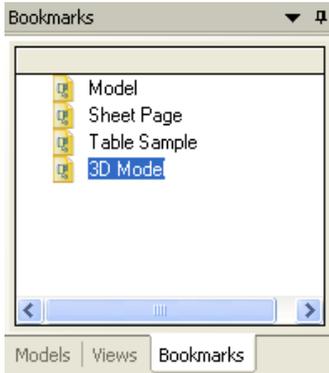
## Views Tab

The **Views** tab lists all the standard, native, and user-defined views. You can switch to a standard, native, or user-defined view, as well as add or delete user-defined views.



# Bookmarks Tab

The **Bookmarks** tab lists links to specific views (Draft views, 2D plans) or other files with information related to the model.



Navigate between these files and views by clicking the appropriate link. Bookmarks lead to various views of CAD files such as CATIA file Model Space, the 3D model of a file and associated 2D engineering drafts.

If a plus sign appears to the left of a bookmark, click it to expand and view the lower bookmark levels. If a minus sign appears to the left of the bookmark, click it to collapse the lower bookmark levels.

To go to a destination specified by a bookmark, click the bookmark text or the page icon located to the left of the bookmark text.

# Global Axes

By default, there is a three-axis representation in the lower left corner of the workspace. The **X-axis** is red, the **Y-axis** is green and the **Z-axis** is blue. When transforming a model or defining a viewpoint, all operations are applied with respect to these axes.

# Selecting Model Parts

In AutoVue, you can select model parts from the **Model Tree** or from the workspace and have them appear highlighted in the Model Tree and on the

model. You can also select a model part and have all its identical parts appear highlighted on the model and in the Model Tree.

**See Also** *Model Tree*

**Note:** In AutoVue, you can configure the **Selection Highlight**.

**See** *Configuring AutoVue for 3D Files*

## Select Model Parts from the Workspace

- 1 Select a part or parts on the model in the workspace.  
**Note:** To select more than one model part, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.
- 2 To select the parent entities of a selected part, press the **Shift** key and select the part again.  
A pop-up appears listing the parent entities of the selected part. Select an entity from the pop-up list.  
The selected part or parts appear highlighted on the model and in the Model Tree.
- 3 To select a group of parts, from the **Edit** menu, select **Select**, then click and drag the mouse around the parts.  
The entities within the box are selected and highlighted in the Model Tree.  
**Note:** If the selected entity is hidden in the Model Tree, the Model Tree expands to display the selected entity.  
**See** *Selecting Model Parts from the Model Tree*

## Selecting All Identical Parts of a Model

- 1 Select a model part in the workspace or from the Model Tree, then right-click and select **Select Identical Parts**.  
All identical parts are highlighted on the model and in the Model Tree.  
If there are no identical parts found, a message appears indicating “No identical parts found”.  
**Note:** You can also select sub-assemblies and **Select Identical Parts** to display all identical sub-assemblies.

## Re-Centering

The **Re-center** option repositions the model back to the center of the View window. You can use a model part as a central reference point to reposition a

model. You can select several model parts to use as one collective central reference point.

## Re-Centering a Model to a Selected Model Part

- 1 Select the model part or parts that you want to use.
- 2 From the **View** menu, select **Re-Center**, and then select **Selected**.  
The model is repositioned using the selected model part or parts as the central reference point.  
**Note:** The **Selected** option is only available when one or more model parts are selected.

## Re-Center All

The **Re-Center All** option repositions the entire model back to the center of the AutoVue workspace.

- 1 From the **View** menu, select **Re-Center**, and then select **All**.  
The model is repositioned to the center of the workspace.

## Re-Centering a Model to an Entity

You can use an entity as a central reference point to reposition a model. The entities are as follows:

---

Entity	Description
Vertex	All vertices are highlighted. Select a vertex to use as the central reference point. <b>Note:</b> A snap box appears when moving the mouse over a vertex.
Edge	All edges are highlighted. Select an edge to use as the central reference point. <b>Note:</b> A snap box appears when moving the mouse over an edge.
Midedge	Highlight all edges in the model. Select a mid-edge to use as the central reference point.

---

---

Entity	Description
Arc Center	Highlight all arcs and circles in the model. Select an arc center to use as the central reference point. <b>Note:</b> A snap box appears when moving the mouse over an arc or circle, indicating the center of the arc.
Face	Select a face to use as the central reference point. <b>Note:</b> When moving the cursor along a model face, the face is highlighted.

---

- 1 From the **View** menu, select **Re-Center**, and then select **Entity**. The Re-Center dialog box appears.
- 2 Select the entity that you want to use as the central reference point. All instances of the entity are highlighted.
- 3 Click an instance of the entity. The model is repositioned using the selected entity as the central reference point.
- 4 Close the Re-Center dialog box.

## Model Tree

The Model Tree displays the model's hierarchy, inter-relation of different parts, assemblies, bodies, and missing XRef notifications. With the tree, you can select different parts and modify their attributes such as color, visibility, render mode or transformation.

## Expanding/Collapsing the Model Tree

You can expand the Model Tree to display child entities of a selected node or nodes.

**Note:** You can also can configure the level you want to expand the Model Tree.

**See *Configuring AutoVue for 3D Files***

- 1 Click the **Models** tab.
- 2 From the Model Tree, select the node or nodes that you want to expand, then right-click and select **Expand All Children**.

**Note:** To select more than one node, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.

The selected entities are highlighted. The Model Tree expands displaying the child entities of the selected nodes.

- 3 To collapse a node, select the node, then right-click and select **Collapse All Children**.

The Model Tree collapses the selected node.

You can also expand a node by clicking  . To collapse a node click  .

## Missing XRef Notification Icon

If there are missing XRefs, the **Missing XRef Notification** icon  appears in the Model Tree to the left of the missing XRef. To view the missing XRefs, do the following:

- 1 From the status bar, click the **Resource** icon  .  
The Properties dialog box appears.  
**Note:** You can also view the missing XRef from the **File** menu, and then selecting **Properties**.
- 2 Click the **Resource Information** tab.  
The missing XRefs appear in the External Reference File Reference File Resources section of the dialog box.
- 3 Click **OK** to close the dialog box.  
**See *Displaying Details About Missing Resources***

## Selecting Model Parts from the Model Tree

- 1 Click the **Models** tab.
- 2 Select the part or parts from the Model tree.  
**Note:** To select more than one model part, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.

The selected part or parts appear highlighted on the model and in the Model Tree.

## Hiding Model Parts

You can hide specific parts of a model or display specific parts and hide the rest of the model.

- 1 Select the part or parts on the model or from the Model Tree.  
**Note:** To select more than one model part, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.

The selected part or parts appear highlighted on the model and in the Model Tree.

- 2 To hide the selected part or parts, right-click a selected part on the model or from the Model Tree and select **Hide**.

The selected part or parts are hidden on the model.

- 3 To display the selected part or parts and hide the rest of the model, right-click a selected part on the model or from the Model Tree and select **Hide Rest**.

The selected parts are displayed in the workspace and the rest of the model is hidden.

## Creating 3D Mockups

In AutoVue you can import other 3D Models into the current active file.

**Note:** The imported files must be 3D and have similar dimensions.

- 1 From the **File** menu, select **Import File for Mockup**.  
The Mockup dialog box appears.
- 2 Click **Add**.  
The File Open dialog box appears.
- 3 Enter path and file name, or click **Browse** to locate the file you want to import.
- 4 Click **OK**.

The file appears in the Mockup dialog box.

**Note:** To import more than one file, repeat steps 2 to 4.

- 5 Click **OK**.  
The files you imported appear in the workspace and in the Model Tree.

**Note:** Once open, you can position these models in the desired manner using the **Transformation** tool, or align the models using **Part Alignment**, or run interference checks.

**See Also** *Transformation*

*Part Alignment*

*Interference Checks*

## Deleting Models from a Mockup

- 1 From the **File** menu, select **Import File for Mockup**.  
The Mockup dialog box appears.
- 2 Select the files that you want to remove.

- 3 Click **Remove**.  
The files are removed from the list.
- 4 Click **OK**.  
The files disappear from the workspace and from the Model Tree.

## Converting 3D Models to Other Formats

Sometimes you need to translate a 3D model to be able to use it with an application it was not created from. AutoVue provides several conversion file formats for you.

### Conversion Options

Depending on the conversion type being performed, the available options in the Convert dialog box will vary. These options are:

---

Option	Description
Save As	Specify the name and path of the file in which the conversion is to be stored. This file is also known as the output file. You can use <b>Browse</b> to provide AutoVue with the file's path.
Convert to Format	A list of all the possible types of output file formats currently available for conversion. The available formats are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• CALS GP4</li><li>• Encapsulated Postscript (Raster)</li><li>• HP Laserjet Printer (PCL)</li><li>• Run Length RLC File</li><li>• PCX Bitmap</li><li>• PDF</li><li>• Stereolithography (STL)</li><li>• TIFF</li><li>• Virtual Reality Modeling Language (VRML)</li><li>• Windows Bitmap</li></ul>

---

Option	Description
Sub-Format	<p>The <b>Sub-Format</b> list appears when you select <b>TIFF</b> or <b>STL</b> from the <b>Convert to Format</b> list.</p> <p>Select the Sub-Format from the list.</p>
Color Depth	<p>Select an option from the list:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>1</b> = Black and white</li> <li>• <b>4</b> = 16 colors</li> <li>• <b>8</b> = 256 colors</li> <li>• <b>24</b> = True color</li> <li>• <b>auto</b> = AutoVue selects the color depth that best matches the original file.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Option is not available for <b>STL</b> and <b>VRML</b> formats.</p>
Positive Triangle Values	<p>When selected, the model is translated so that all the vertex coordinate values are positive.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Option is only available when <b>Convert to Format</b> is set to <b>STL</b>.</p>
Convert Region	<p>The area of the file to be converted. The available options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>All</b> - converts the entire file</li> <li>• <b>Display</b> - converts the image to fit on the output page For example, if you zoomed in on a particular region of the file, the zoomed portion of the file is converted.</li> <li>• <b>Extent</b> - converts the entire extents of the file</li> <li>• <b>Selected</b> - converts the selected model parts in the file</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Options vary depending on the selected format.</p>
Convert Pages	<p>The number of pages to be converted. The available options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>All</b> - converts all pages of the file</li> <li>• <b>Current</b> - converts the current page of the file</li> <li>• <b>Range</b> - converts the pages of the file indicated in the range</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Option is only enabled when converting to <b>TIFF</b>.</p>

Option	Description
X and Y	<p>Specify <b>X</b> and <b>Y</b> to define the resolution for the converted file.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>X</b> indicates the number of horizontal pixels</li> <li>• <b>Y</b> is the number of vertical pixels for the current active file contents</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> At times, AutoVue presets <b>X</b> and <b>Y</b> to match the specifications of the selected conversion file format.</p>

## Converting a 3D Model

- 1 From the **File** menu, select **Convert**.  
The Convert dialog box appears.
- 2 In the **Save As** field, enter the path and filename or click **Browse** to locate the directory where you want to convert the file to, then enter a file name.
- 3 From the Convert to Format list, select the format you want to convert the file to.  
**Note:** The Output and Convert area options change according to the type of format you choose.
- 4 Select the output and convert options that you want to set for the file.  
**See *Conversion Options***
- 5 Click **OK**.  
The Conversion in Progress dialog box appears. The dialog box disappears when the file is converted successfully.

## Manipulating Views

AutoVue provides the flexibility to manipulate the display of a 3D model. You can rotate, scale, or translate a model or any selection of model parts. You can also navigate from one page to another page of a multi-page file.

You can access these options from the **View** menu. The options are:

Menu	Sub-Menu	Description
Zoom	Zoom In	<p>Zoom in by a factor of 2. From the Autovue toolbar, you can also click</p> 

Menu	Sub-Menu	Description
	Zoom Out	Zoom out by a factor of 2. From the Autovue toolbar, you can also click  .
	Previous	Return to the previous zoom level. From the Autovue toolbar, you can also click  or right-click in workspace and select from pop-up menu.
	Selected	Resize the object so that the objects selected fill the window.
	Dynamic Zoom	Click and drag the cursor up to zoom in or down to zoom out. From the Autovue toolbar, you can also click  .
	Zoom Box	Click and drag to draw a box around an object that you want to enlarge to fill the window. From the Autovue toolbar, you can also click  or right-click in workspace and select from pop-up menu.
Zoom Fit		Resize object to fit window. From the Autovue toolbar, you can also click  or right-click in workspace and select from pop-up menu.
Pan		Click and drag to reposition the model, then release the mouse button. From the Autovue toolbar, you can also click  or right-click in the workspace and select from the pop-up menu

Menu	Sub-Menu	Description
Rotate		Click and drag to rotate the model on all three axes, then release the mouse button. From the Autovue toolbar, you can also click  or right-click in workspace and select from pop-up menu.
Spin		Click and drag the object in the direction you want the object to spin continuously, then release mouse button. To stop the object from spinning, click once anywhere in the workspace. <b>Note:</b> The spin velocity is determined by the speed at which you drag the mouse. From the Autovue toolbar, you can also click  .
Re-Center	All	Reposition the entire model back to the center of the AutoVue workspace. <b>See <i>Re-Centering</i></b>
	Selected	Only available when one or more model parts are selected. The selected part or parts are considered as the central reference point by which the model is repositioned. <b>See <i>Re-Centering</i></b>
	Entity	Select a model part or entity as a central reference point to reposition a model. <b>See <i>Re-Centering</i></b>
Camera Views		Displays different views of 3D models: Isometric, Top, Bottom, Front, Back, Left, Right, and View Points. Right-click in workspace and select the view from the pop-up menu. <b>See <i>3D Views</i></b>
Views		Create your own views of 3D models. Right-click in workspace and select the view from the pop-up menu. <b>See <i>3D Views</i></b>

Menu	Sub-Menu	Description
Page	Next Page	Go to the next page of a multi-page file. From the Autovue toolbar, you can also click  .
	Previous Page	Go to the previous page of a multi-page file. From the Autovue toolbar, you can also click  .
	Page Number	Go to the specified page of a multi-page file. From the Autovue toolbar, you can also click  .

## Display Attributes

AutoVue provides several different render methods to display a 3D CAD model. You can also adjust the degree of transparency, change color, or visibility to suit your preferences.

## Render Modes

The choice of render mode varies between the level of detail and the render speed of the model. For example, a shaded model is three-dimensional and highly detailed but requires more time to render. The different render modes are as follows:

Method	Description
Wireframe	A skeletal model constructed using lines and curves that represent the model's "true" edges. All internal lines are visible.
Shaded	A solid model constructed of planes and surfaces. These surfaces are shaded to increase the illusion of three dimensions.
Hidden Line	A wireframe constructed with all internal lines hidden.

Method	Description
Silhouette	A wireframe constructed with all internal lines visible but including additional silhouette edges. These are not "true" edges but help to visualize the model.
Wire Polygons	A skeletal model constructed of unfilled polygons.
Shaded Wire	An outlined solid model constructed of planes and surfaces. The outline is a solid line and the model's surfaces are shaded to increase the illusion of three dimensions.
Reflective	A solid model constructed of planes and surfaces. These surfaces are have a reflective sheer to accentuate the model's shadows.
Reflective Wire	An outlined solid model constructed of planes and surfaces. The outline is a solid line and the model's surfaces have a reflective sheer to the model's shadows.

## Changing the Render Mode

**Note:** A check mark beside the attribute indicates the current render mode.

- 1 From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visual Effects**, and then select **Rendering**.

**Note:** You can also change the render mode for selected model parts.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Render Mode** .

The model or selected model parts change to the selected render mode.

## Changing the Visibility

You can choose to show or hide selected parts; this can be done from either the Model Tree or the workspace.

### **See Also** *Model Tree*

- 1 From the Model Tree, deselect the check box beside the model part or parts that you want to hide.
- 2 Select the check box beside the model parts that you want to set visible. The selected model parts appear or disappear from the model.
 

**Note:** You can also hide model parts by selecting them on the model or from the Model Tree, then right-clicking and select **Hide**. Selecting **Hide Rest** displays the selected model parts and hides the rest of the model.

## Changing Model Color

You can change the color of a specific model part or selected model parts.

- 1 Select the model or model parts whose color you want to change.  
**Note:** If no part is selected, the change is applied to the entire model.
- 2 From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visual Effects**, and then select **Color**.  
The Color dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Color** .

- 3 Select the color that you want to change to.
- 4 Click **Apply**.

The selected part or parts change to the selected color.

**Note:** To set the model color to its default color, repeat steps 1 to 2 and click **Reset** in the Color dialog box.

## Adjusting the Transparency

You can adjust the degree of transparency of a model. This function only applies to shaded and shaded wire models.

- 1 Select the model or model parts whose transparency you want to adjust.
- 2 From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visual Effects**, and then select **Transparency**.

The Set Transparency dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Transparency** .

- 3 To adjust the transparency, move the slider left or right.  
Select **Apply Dynamically** if you want the transparency to simultaneously change with the movement of the slider.  
**Note:** Alternatively, to adjust the transparency level, you can enter in the **Value** field a value from 0 to 1. Where **0** renders the model opaque (default state) and **1** renders it transparent.
- 4 Click **Close** to apply the changes and close the Set Transparency dialog box.

## Light Settings

The default light setting consists of a white light at the 10 o'clock position with respect to the model. In the Lighting dialog box, it appears as a grey ball of white light at the 10 o'clock position along the circumference of the larger sphere.

**Ambient lighting** is the overall lighting that surrounds an object. It provides constant illumination to every surface of the model. This type of lighting is particularly effective as a fill-light for surfaces not directly illuminated by a directional light source. You can set the intensity or source position; too high a setting tends to saturate the image and reduce its clarity.

Using the **Directional lighting** option, you can adjust the position of the light source on an object.

You can make the following modifications via the Lighting dialog box:

- Set the intensity and source position of the ambient light.
- Set the direction of light.
- Add and remove a light source.
- Change light color, brightness, and speculariry.

*See **Removing a Light Source***

## Setting Ambient Lighting

- 1 From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visual Effects**, and then select **Lighting**. The Lighting dialog box appears.
- 2 Click and drag the **Ambient Light** sliding bar until you achieve the desired lighting.  
The lighting automatically changes with the movement of the sliding bar.  
**Note:** The **Custom** option is selected when you modify the ambient light.
- 3 To set the ambient lighting to its default setting, select **Default**.
- 4 Click **Close** to close the Lighting dialog box.

## Setting Directional Lighting

Setting the directional lighting adjusts the position of the light source on the model. You can also add a new light source.

- 1 From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visual Effects**, and then select **Lighting**. The Lighting dialog box appears.
- 2 To change the direction of the light, click and drag the small ball until you achieve the desired lighting.  
**Note:** You can also drag the white ball outside of the large ball.  
The direction of the light reflected on the 3D model automatically changes with the movement of the white ball.

**Note:** The **Custom** option is selected when you adjust the position of the light.

- 3 To set the light direction to its default setting, select **Default**.
- 4 Click **Close** to close the Lighting dialog box.

## Adding a New Light Source

- 1 From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visual Effects**, and then select **Lighting**. The Lighting dialog box appears.
- 2 Select the **Two lights** option.  
A new light source appears as a black ball in the 5 o'clock position.
- 3 To add more light sources, right-click inside the square surrounding the ball and select **Create New Light Source** from the pop-up menu.  
The Custom option is selected and the new light source appears as a white ball.
- 4 Click and drag the small ball until you achieve the desired lighting.
- 5 To restore the light source to its default setting, select **Default**.
- 6 Click **Close** to close the Lighting dialog box.

**Note:** You can have a total of eight light sources at a time.

## Changing the Light Properties

- 1 From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visual Effects**, and then select **Lighting**. The Lighting dialog box appears.
- 2 To change the properties of the light, such as color or brightness, right-click directly on the small ball and select **Light Properties**.  
The Light Property dialog box appears.
- 3 Select a color from the **Color** menu.  
Additionally, you can drag the **Brightness** and **Specularity** slide bars to modify the brightness of the source and the brightness of the model's reflection to light, respectively.
- 4 Click **OK**.  
The light properties modifications are applied.  
**Note:** To set the light properties to its default setting, select **Default**.
- 5 Click **Close** to close the Lighting dialog box.

## Removing a Light Source

- 1 From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visual Effects**, and then select **Lighting**.

The Lighting dialog box appears.

- 2 Right-click directly on the small ball that you want to remove and select **Remove Light**.

The small ball disappears and the light change is reflected.

- 3 You can also select **Default** to restore the lighting properties to its default setting.
- 4 Click **Close** to close the Lighting dialog box.

## 3D Views

You can display different views of 3D Models or create your own views.

### Default View

The **Default View** is the isometric view for three-dimensional CAD models. This viewpoint has the viewing camera positioned at an equal distance from all three axes and pointing directly at the origin.

### Setting Standard or Camera Views

Rather than entering Rotation mode, you can view various predefined rotations with the **Camera Views** option from View and Markup modes.

From the **View** menu, select **Camera Views**, and then select pre-defined view you want to display. The view options are Isometric, Top, Bottom, Front, Back, Left, and Right.

The model changes to the selected view.

**Note:** You can also click the **Views** tab, then click the view from the Standard Views tree, or right-click in the workspace and select **Camera Views**.

### Setting Native Views

AutoVue displays views for a 3D file as saved in its native application.

**Note:** Native views are present only if the file contains saved views.

From the **View** menu, select **Views**, and then select **Native Views**.

The model re-orientes to the selected view.

The view options vary depending on the file. Examples of the view options are Last Saved View, Presentation, Front, Back, Left, Right, Top, Bottom, Isometric, Trimetric, and Dimetric.

**Note:** You can also click the **Views** tab, and then click the view from the **Native Views** tree, or right-click in the workspace and select **Views**, and then select **Native Views**.

## Creating a User-Defined View

You may want to create and save your own views. AutoVue allows you to define a view and add it to the **User Defined Views**.

**Note:** You can define a customized view in View or Markup mode. Any views you apply to displayed models during Markup mode are saved as part of the Markup file.

- 1 Apply your own views or transformation to the displayed model.  
**Note:** The view states that you can apply and save for your defined view are Extents, Rotation, Model Transformation, Explosion, Render Modes, Color, Transparency, Visibility, Sectioning, Camera Settings and views involving Mockups.

- 2 From the **View** menu, select **Views**, select **User Defined Views**, and then select **Add View**.

The Add User Defined View dialog box appears.

**Note:** You can also click the **Views** tab, then right-click **User Defined Views** and select **Add View**, or right-click in the workspace and select **Views**, select **User Defined Views**, and then select **Add View**.

- 3 Enter a view name for the view that you want to define.
- 4 Click **OK**.

To see the view you defined, click the **Views** tab and select it from the User Defined Views tree or select **Views**, select **User Defined Views**.

**Note:** You can also alternate between **User Defined Views** and **Standard Views** without affecting your personalized views.

## Deleting a User-Defined View

- 1 Under the User Defined Views tree, select the view that you want to delete, then right-click and select **Delete**.  
A confirmation prompt appears.
- 2 Click **Yes**.  
The view disappears from the tree.

## Displaying the Perspective Projection of a 3D Model

The **Perspective** option shows objects in three dimensions with distances, planes and curved surfaces adjusted to give a sense of depth that reflects the desired perspective to the eye.

**Note:** You can use the **Perspective** option in any of the 3D Views since it is a projection mode rather than a viewpoint.

From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visual Effects**, and then select **Perspective**. The depth of the model changes.

## Viewing a Model from a Particular Viewpoint

To view a model from a particular point, you can specify a viewpoint.

- 1 From the **View** menu, select **Camera Views**, and then select **View Points**. The View Point dialog box appears.

**Note:** You can also right-click in the workspace and select **Camera Views**, and then select **View Points**.

- 2 Enter the coordinates for **X**, **Y** and **Z**:
  - In the **Camera Position** fields, enter the coordinates to determine the position of the camera lens.
  - In the **Target Position** fields, enter the coordinates to determine the position of the 3D model viewed through the camera lens.
  - In the **Up Direction** fields, change the coordinates to values between 0 and 1 to determine the upward orientation.
- 3 Click **OK**.

The entity moves to the defined viewpoint. The Global axes and the User Coordinates System change position to reflect the viewpoint.

## Layers

Use this option to configure the current active file's layers to display.

- 1 From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visibility Control**, and then select **Layers**.

The Select the Layers to Display dialog box appears listing the layers and layer visibility for the current active file.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Layers** .

- 2 To sort the list of layers in the dialog box, click the **Name** column header to sort alphabetically or numerically, or click the **Status** column header to sort by visibility.
- 3 Select the check box beside the layers that you want to set visible.  
Deselect the check box beside the layers that you want to hide.
- 4 Click **OK**.  
The selected layers are displayed.

## Entity Properties

You can view properties such as visibility, colors, transparency, mass properties, and extents of a model or model parts.

## Viewing Attributes

The **Attributes** tab displays a model or model part's attributes. The list of attributes will vary depending on the model. Some of the viewable **General** attributes are:

Attribute	Description
Color	Color of the selected model part.
Density	The density of the model or selected model part(s).
Mesh Resolution	The number of polygons drawn when displaying a model.
Name	The model part name or the displayed page name of the model.
Render Mode	The dynamic rendering used for displaying model or model part. For example, <b>Shaded</b> , <b>Shaded Wire</b> and <b>Wireframe</b> .
Transparency	The value between 0 and 1 representing the model or model part's degree of transparency. <b>0</b> = opaque <b>1</b> = transparent
Visibility	The value <b>True</b> (visible) or <b>False</b> (invisible) for a model or model part.

If you are displaying the 3D view of an EDA, AutoVue displays the general attributes mentioned above. In addition, displays attributes specific to the Printed Circuit Board (PCB), such as component name, board side, component class and device type.

If a 3D file has Product and Manufacturing Information (PMI) and a PMI entity selected, the PMI attributes are displayed along with the above general attributes and attributes specific to the PCB board. Some of the viewable PMI attributes are X-Axis, Y-Axis, font color, text font name, and tolerance type.

- 1 To view the attributes of specific model parts, select the parts from the model.  
To view the attributes of the entire 3D model, make sure that no parts are selected.
- 2 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Show Entity Properties**.  
The Entity Properties dialog box appears.  
**Note:** You can also right-click in the workspace and select **Show Entity Properties**, or in the Model Tree, select the model part or parts, then right-click and select **Show Entity Properties**.
- 3 Click the **Attributes** tab.  
The attributes of the selected model parts are displayed in a hierarchical tree.
- 4 Click **Close** to close the Entity Properties dialog box.

## Viewing Mass Properties

The **Mass Properties** tab displays the precise measurements for mass, volume, area, center of gravity, moments of inertia, and inertia tensor for any model or selection.

- 1 Select the part or parts for which you want to calculate the mass properties.  
To select multiple parts, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.  
To view the mass properties of the entire 3D model, make sure no parts are selected.  
**Note:** You can also make your selection after you open the Entity Properties dialog box.
- 2 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Show Entity Properties**.  
The Entity Properties dialog box appears.  
**Note:** You can also right-click in the workspace and select **Show Entity Properties**, or in the Model Tree, select the model part or parts, then right-click and select **Show Entity Properties**.
- 3 Click the **Mass Properties** tab to view the properties of the selected mass.

**Note:** When a mass property cannot be calculated, “N/A” displays in red for that property. When this is the case, you can also click **Error Report** for a list of mass properties that could not be calculated.

- 4 To change the density, change measurement units, or configure computation of inertia tensor, click **Options**.  
The Options dialog box appears.  
**See *Configuring Mass Properties***
- 5 Click **OK** to close the Options dialog box.
- 6 Click **Close** to close the Entity Properties dialog box.

## Configuring Mass Properties

From the **Mass Properties** tab, you can change the density, the measurement units or configure the reference point of inertia tensor.

- 7 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Show Entity Properties**.  
The Entity Properties dialog box appears.  
**Note:** You can also right-click in the workspace and select **Show Entity Properties**, or in the Model Tree, select the model part or parts, then right-click and select **Show Entity Properties**.
- 8 Click the **Mass Properties** tab.
- 9 Click **Options**.  
The Options dialog box appears.
- 10 To change the density, enter a value in the **Density** field.  
To change the density units, select the unit for **Mass** and **Length** from their respective lists in the Units section.
- 11 To apply the density to model parts with unknown density, select **Use Only for Parts with Unknown Density**.  
To apply the density to all model parts, select **Use for All Parts**.
- 12 To change the display units, select the unit for **Mass** and **Length** from their respective lists in the Display Units section.
- 13 To compute the inertia tensor based on output coordinate system, select **Output Coordinate System Origin**.  
To compute the inertia tensor based on the center of gravity, select **Center of Gravity**.
- 14 Click **OK**.  
Mass properties are instantly calculated and displayed in the **Mass Properties** tab.  
**Note:** When a mass property cannot be calculated, “N/A” displays for that property. When this is the case, you can also click the **Error Report** button for a list of Mass properties that could not be calculated.

- 15 To save the changes, click **Save As**.  
The Save Mass Properties As dialog box appears.
- 16 Specify the path where you want to store the file and enter the file name, then click **Save**.  
AutoVue saves the results in a **.txt** file.
- 17 Click **OK** to close the Entity Properties dialog box.

## Viewing Extents

The **Extents** tab displays the orientation coordinates and center coordinates of the X, Y, and Z axes for any model or selection, as well as the width, height, and depth measurements.

- 1 Select the part or parts for which you want to view Extents. To select multiple parts, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.  
To view the Extents of the entire 3D model, make sure no parts are selected.  
**Note:** You can also make your selection after you open the Entity Properties dialog box.
- 2 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Show Entity Properties**.  
The Show Entity Properties dialog box appears.  
**Note:** You can also right-click in the workspace and select **Show Entity Properties**, or in the **Model Tree**, select the model part or parts, then right-click and select **Show Entity Properties**.
- 3 Click the **Extents** tab.  
You have three extents options:
  - Select **Transformed** if you want to view the extents after you have transformed the model.
  - Select **UnTransformed** if you want to view the extents of the model without transformation.
  - Select **Oriented** if you want to view the X, Y, and Z coordinates of the reoriented model or selection.
- 4 Click **Close** to close the Entity Properties dialog box.

## PMI Entities

A 3D file's Product and Manufacturing Information (PMI) is composed of annotations that are included in design files. These annotations indicate the limits and constraints that must be observed during the production of the object displayed in the 3D model.

At the highest level, PMI provides information about dimensions, feature control frames, weld specifications, and surface finishes. This information is based upon key design features which are specified through datum targets, measurement points, reference geometry (for example, construction lines, surfaces, and objects), or the geometry inherent in the object.

The following terms can be used interchangeably with the term PMI:

- Datums Cosmetics
- Dimensioning Cosmetics
- Geometric Tolerances (GTOLs)
- Geometric Dimensioning and Tolerance (GDT or GD&T)
- Functional Tolerance Annotation (FTA or FTA&A)

## PMI Filtering

Use PMI Filtering to select which types of product and manufacturing information to display.

- 1 From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visibility Control**, and then select **PMI Filtering**.

The PMI Filtering dialog box appears displaying all PMI types.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **PMI Filtering** .

- 2 In the **Tree** column, select the check box beside the items that you want to show in the Model Tree.

In the **View** column, select the check box beside the items that you want to show on the 3D model.

Deselect the check box beside the items that you want to hide.

**Note:** Click **All** to show all items, or click **None** to hide all items.

- 3 Click **OK**.

Only items selected in the **Tree** column are displayed in the Model Tree.

Only items selected in the **View** column are visible on the 3D model.

**Note:** Visibility settings are saved and will be restored the next time you open the PMI filtering dialog box.

- 4 AutoVue supports default PMI visibility as saved in the file. To restore default PMI visibility, click **Default** in the PMI Filtering dialog box.

## Aligning to a PMI Entity

From the Model Tree, right-click the PMI item that you want to align to and select **Align To**.

AutoVue aligns to the selected PMI item.

## Go to a Displayed PMI Entity

From the Model Tree, right-click the PMI item that you want to go to on the model and select **Go To**.

AutoVue zooms to the selected PMI item.

## PMI Configuration Entities

The Views, Captures, Reference/Grouping entities refer to specific configurations of the model. These PMI configuration entities are listed in the Model Tree and are activated by right-clicking the entity and then selecting **Activate**.

### Views

The View configuration entity displays predefined views, and highlights associated PMI entities.

- 1 Expand the Views tree to display the defined views.
- 2 Right-click the selected view, and then select **Activate**.  
The model and PMI entities display in the workspace as defined in the selected view.

**Note:** The PMI entities are also highlighted in the Model Tree.

### Captures

The Captures configuration entity displays predefined views.

- 1 Expand the Captures tree to display the defined captures.
- 2 Right-click the selected captures, and then select **Activate**.  
The model and PMI entities display in the workspace as defined in the selected capture.

### Reference Frames

The Reference Frames configuration entity highlights the grouped PMI entities.

- 1 Expand the Reference Frames tree to display the predefined reference frames.
- 2 Right-click the selected reference frame, and then select **Activate**.

The grouped PMI entities are highlighted in the Model Tree.

## PMI Hyperlinks

PMI entities can also include hyperlinks. To fire a PMI hyperlink, do the following:

- 1 From the Model Tree or workspace, right-click the PMI hyperlink entity.
- 2 From the menu, select **Follow Hyperlink**.  
The 3D Hyperlink dialog box appears if there are multiple hyperlinks associated with the selected PMI entity.
- 3 From the 3D Hyperlink dialog box, select a link and then click **Fire**.  
The selected link opens.

## Manipulate Mode

You can rotate 3D CAD models along a specific axis. You can scale a model part up and down, as well as translate the model.

In Manipulate Mode, you can resize, translate, and/or rotate selected parts of the model. When you select one or more model parts, AutoVue displays a model-size representation of the Global Axes going through the selected part or parts of the 3D model.

## Panning a Model Along the X, Y and Z-Axis

- 1 From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Manipulate**.  
You are now in Manipulate mode.  
**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Manipulate** .
- 2 Select the model part or parts that you want to move.  
**Note:** To select more than one part, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.  
A model-size representation of the Global Axes appears through the model part or parts and are encased by a three-dimensional box.
- 3 Click and hold the mouse button on the arrow at the end of the axis that you want to pan.
- 4 Drag the mouse to where you want to move the part or parts.
- 5 To exit Manipulate mode, click **Manipulate** , or from the **Manipulate** menu, select **Manipulate**.

**Note:** To restore the default state of a part of the model, from the **Manipulate** menu, select **Transform**, and then select **Reset Selected**. To restore the default state for the whole model, select **Reset All**.

## Rotating a Model Along the X, Y and Z-Axis

- 1 From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Manipulate**.  
You are now in Manipulate mode.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Manipulate** .

- 2 Select the model part or parts that you want to manipulate.

**Note:** To select more than one part, press the **Shift** or **Control** key when selecting.

A model-size representation of the Global Axes appears through the model part or parts and are enclosed by a three-dimensional box.

- 3 Click and hold the mouse button on the sphere at the end of the axis you want to rotate.

Clicking on an axis sphere allows rotation around one of the other two axes.

**Note:** The initial mouse movement determines which of the two axes will mark the site of rotation. If the axis you chose does not rotate around the right axis for the rotation that you want to make, click the sphere again and move the mouse in a different direction.

- 4 Move the mouse to rotate the model by the selected axis.

**Note:** If you want to rotate the selection freely, as done in Rotate Mode, press the Control key during rotation.

- 5 To exit Manipulate mode, click **Manipulate** , or from the **Manipulate** menu, select **Manipulate**.

**Note:** To restore the default state of a part of the model, from the **Manipulate** menu, select **Transform**, and then select **Reset Selected**. To restore the default state for the whole model, select **Reset All**.

## Scaling a Model Along the X, Y and Z-Axis

- 1 From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Manipulate**.  
You are now in Manipulate mode.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Manipulate** .

- 2 Select the model part or parts that you want to scale.

**Note:** To select more than one part, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.

A model-size representation of the Global Axes appears through the model part or parts and are encased by a three-dimensional box.

- 3 Click and drag a corner cube of the box up or down to scale the selected model part.
- 4 To exit Manipulate mode, click **Manipulate** , or from the **Manipulate** menu, select **Manipulate**.

**Note:** To restore the default state of a part of the model, from the **Manipulate** menu, select **Transform**, and then select **Reset Selected**. To restore the default state for the whole model, select **Reset All**.

## Part Alignment

With the **Part Alignment** option, you can select a point on a model's vertex, edge, or face to align to a another model or model part.

The **Mobile** point determines the precise point of alignment for the model part. The **Fixed** point on the model determines the precise fixed point to which the mobile part will align.

When aligning models parts, you can choose from one of the following Constraint Types:

Option	Type	Description
Constraint	Coincident	The <b>Mobile</b> part is positioned so that the selected point on the mobile part coincides with the selected part on the <b>Fixed</b> part.
	Parallel	Align the <b>Mobile</b> point so that it is parallel to the <b>Fixed</b> point.
	Perpendicular	Align the <b>Mobile</b> point so that it is perpendicular to the <b>Fixed</b> point.
	Concentric	Align the <b>Mobile</b> point so that it has the same center as the <b>Fixed</b> point

## Part Alignment Constraints

The table below lists the available **Constraint Types** for different combinations of part alignment.

	<b>Point</b>	<b>Line</b>	<b>Arc</b>	<b>Plane</b>	<b>Sphere</b>	<b>Cylinder</b>	<b>Cone</b>
<b>Cone</b>	Coin Con	Par Per	Con	Per Con	Coin Con	Par Con	Coin Con Par
<b>Cylinder</b>	Con	Par Con	Par Con	Per	Coin Con	Par Con	
<b>Sphere</b>	Con	Coin Con	Con	Coin	Coin Con		
<b>Plane</b>	Coin	Per	Coin Par	Coin Par			
<b>Arc</b>	Con	Per Con	Par Con				
<b>Line</b>	Coin	Coin Par					
<b>Point</b>	Coin						

**Note:** The letters in the table indicate the **Constraint Type**:

Where:

Coin - **Coincident**

Par - **Parallel**

Per - **Perpendicular**

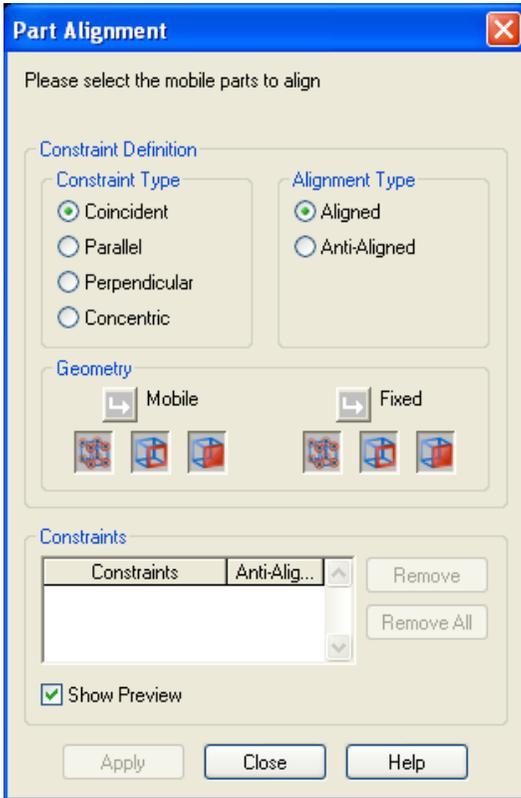
Con - **Concentric**

## Aligning Model Parts

**Note:** To see a preview of the alignment before applying the change, select the **Show Preview** check box.

- 1 From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Align Parts**.  
The Part Alignment dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Align Parts** .



- 2 Select the Constraint Type that you want to perform.  
**See *Part Alignment Constraints***
- 3 Select the Alignment Type:
  - Select **Aligned** if you want to align the Mobile point on the model part to the Fixed point on the model.
  - Select **Anti-Aligned** if you want to align the Mobile point on the model part so that it is opposite to the Fixed point on the model.
- 4 Select a model part. The **Mobile** arrow  is enabled.

- 5 Click **Vertex** , **Edge** , or **Face**  to select the type of geometrical point you want to click on the model part to be aligned. All instances of the selected geometrical point appear highlighted.
- 6 Click the geometrical point on the selected model part. The geometrical point is highlighted. The **Fixed** arrow  is enabled.
- 7 Click **Vertex** , **Edge** , or **Face**  to select the type of geometrical point you want to click on the model part to remain fixed.
- 8 Click the geometrical point on the model.
- 9 Click **Apply**. The model part is aligned according to the chosen options. The Constraint Type and the types of geometrical points aligned appear under Constraints section of the dialog box.

**Note:** To remove a constraint, select the Constraint that you want to remove, then click **Remove**. To remove all part alignments, click **Remove All**.
- 10 Click **Close** to close the Part Alignment dialog box.

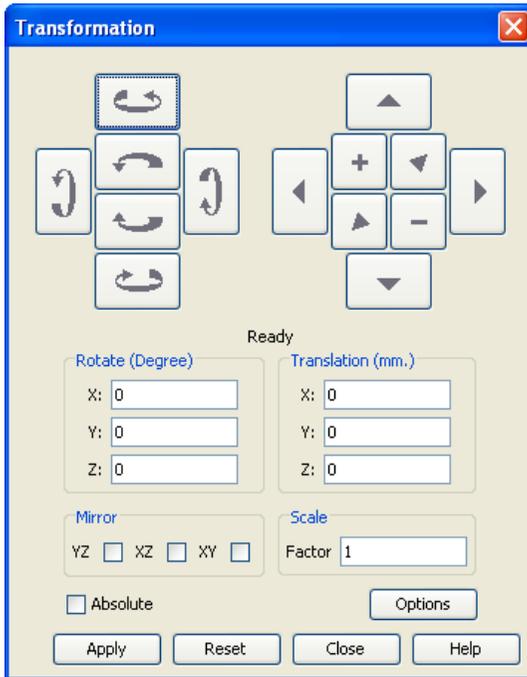
**Note:** A prompt will appear if you did not apply the changes before clicking **Close**.
- 11 To restore the default state of a part of the model, from the **Manipulate** menu, select **Transform**, and then select **Reset Selected**. To restore the default state for the whole model, select **Reset All**.

## Transformation

With the **Transformation** option, you can rotate, scale, or translate a model or any selection of model parts, by using the illustrated buttons or by entering X, Y or Z values.

From the Manipulate menu, select **Transform**, and then select **Define**.

The **Transformation** dialog box appears as below.



**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Transform** .

In the **Transformation** dialog box, the buttons on the left correspond to the rotational moves along the three axes, and the buttons on the right correspond to the translational moves along the three axes and the scaling up and down.

## Transforming a Model Using Illustration Buttons

- 1 From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Transform**, and then select **Define**. The Transformation dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also select **Transform** .

- 2 Select the model part or parts that you want to rotate, translate, or scale.

**Note:** To select more than one model part, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting. If no part is selected, transformation is applied to the entire model.

- 3 Use the rotate or translate buttons to transform the model.

**See *Rotate Buttons***

***Translate Buttons***

- 4 To set the translate, rotate and scale increments, click **Options**. The **Options** dialog box appears.
  - a. Enter the **Translate Increment** value in inches.
  - b. Enter the **Rotate Increment** value in degrees.
  - c. Enter the **Scale Increment** value, then click **OK**.

When you click a rotation, translation or scale button, the model transforms in increments of the values entered in the **Options** dialog box.

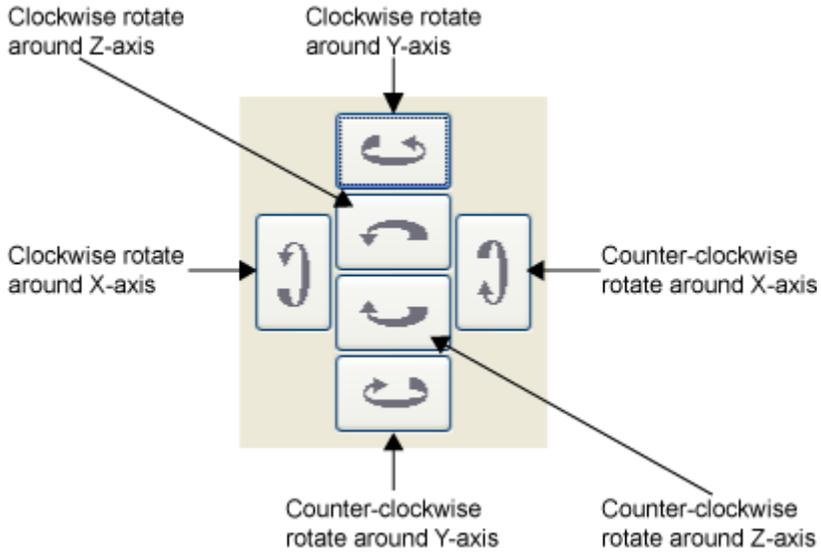
- 5 Click **Reset** to set the model to its original transformation.
- 6 Click **Close** to close the Transformation dialog box.

The transformation state remains displayed.
- 7 To restore the default state of a part of the model, from the **Manipulate** menu, select **Transform**, and then select **Reset Selected**. To restore the default state for the whole model, select **Reset All**.

**See Also *Resetting the Transformation of a 3D Model***

## Rotate Buttons

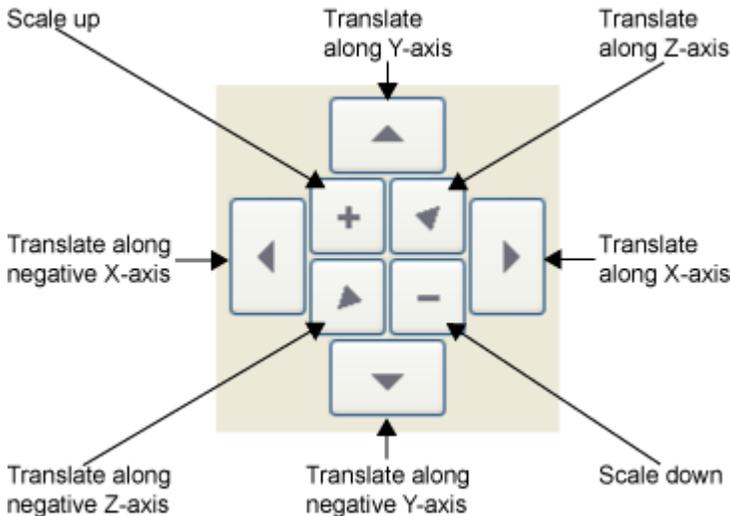
The following diagram identifies the function of each rotate button.



**Note:** To repeat a transformation, continue clicking the button.

## Translate Buttons

The following diagram identifies the function of each translate button.



**Note:** To repeat a transformation, continue clicking the button.

## Transforming a Model by Setting Values

- 1 From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Transform**, and then select **Define**. The Transformation dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also select **Transform** .

- 2 Select the model part or parts that you want to rotate, translate or scale.
 

**Note:** To select more than one model part, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.
- 3 To rotate the model by set values, enter the X, Y and Z value.  
To translate the model by set values, enter the X, Y and Z value.
- 4 To view a mirror image, in the Mirror section of the dialog box, select a check box.
- 5 To scale the model by a factor, in **Factor** field, enter a scale factor.
- 6 Click **Apply**.  
To apply absolute transformation instead of incremental, select the **Absolute** check box.

- 7 Click **Apply**.
- 8 To repeat a transformation, deselect **Absolute**, then continue clicking **Apply**.  
**Note:** Click **Reset** to set the model to its original transformation.
- 9 Click **Close** to close the Transformation dialog box.  
The transformation state remains displayed.

**Note:** To restore the default state of a part of the model, from the **Manipulate** menu, select **Transform**, and then select **Reset Selected**. To restore the default state for the whole model, select **Reset All**.

*See Also **Resetting the Transformation of a 3D Model***

## Resetting the Transformation of a 3D Model

You can reset a model or selected parts to their original transformation.

- 1 View the transformed 3D Model.
- 2 To reset the entire model to its original transformation, from the **Manipulate** menu, select **Transform**, and then select **Reset All**.
- 3 To reset selected model parts to their original transformation, from the **Manipulate** menu, select **Transform**, and then select **Reset Selected**.  
The model or selected parts changes to their original transformation.

**Note:** You can also reset selected model parts. To do so, from the Model Tree, deselect the check box beside the parts in the **Transformation** column



## Sectioning

With **Sectioning** feature, you can view the cross-section and cut-through of 3D models. In the Define Section dialog box, you can define the section plane position, section plane orientation, and the cut-through.

## Section Plane Options

In the Define Section dialog box, you can use the following options to define the orientation of the section plane:

---

<b>Option</b>	<b>Description</b>
XY Plane	Section plane is oriented along the XY plane.
YZ Plane	Section plane is oriented along the YZ plane.
XZ Plane	Section plane is oriented along the XZ plane.
From 3 Vertices	Select three vertices on the object to define the orientation of the section plane.
From Face Normal	Select a face on the object to define the orientation of the section plane perpendicular to the face.
From Edge Tangent	Select an edge on the object to define the orientation of the section plane perpendicular to the edge's tangent.
Define a Plane	Define X, Y and Z coordinates to orient the section plane.

---

## Cut Options

In the Define Section dialog box, you can use the following cut options to define the cut-through of an object:

---

<b>Option</b>	<b>Description</b>
Don't Cut	Display the object without a cut.
Cut	Object displayed is cut along the section plane.
Invert	Reverse the selection, display the other part of the object.
Show Both	Restore the cut part of the object.
Edges Only	Display only the edges of the object along the section plane.

---

## Defining the Section Plane and Cut-through

- 1 From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Section**, and then select **Define**.  
The Define Section dialog box appears.  
**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Sectioning** .
- 2 From the Section Plane list, select the orientation for the section plane.  
**See Section Plane Options**
- 3 From the Cut Options list, select the cut option that you want.  
**See Cut Options**
- 4 To define the plane position, click and drag the **Plane Position** slider to the position you want.  
Select **Dynamic**, if you want the plane to move simultaneously with the slider.
- 5 Select **Show Plane**, if you want the section plane visible.
- 6 Select **Fill**, if you want the section plane filled.  
The section plane is displayed as filled and the **Section Area** is calculated.  
**Note:** The fill color can also be set from the Configuration dialog box.  
**See Configuring AutoVue**
- 7 From the **Measured Units** list, select the unit in which you want to measure the section surface.
- 8 Click **Close** to close the Define Section dialog box.  
**Note:** Once you have defined the section plane and closed the Define Section dialog box, among other options, you can choose whether to enable, remove, or invert a defined section from the **Section** menu.

## Exploding

You can use the **Explode** option to better understand the structure of an assembly and to analyze the dismount capability. You can also save the exploded view, as well as obtain a printed document of the exploded product for further analysis.

## Explode Options

From the Explode dialog box, you can define how the explosion is to be performed and to visually explode or implode a model. The options that you can set are:

Option	Description
Maximum Depth	<p>Define up to which level you want to explode. All entities from the root level to the specified level are exploded. All entities on the other levels will not be exploded.</p> <p>If you are exploding:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Whole model</b> - the number of available levels depends on how many explodable levels exist in the model. For example, if there are four levels, with level 2 being the first level under the main assembly, then level 3 and level 4 are added to the list.</li> <li>• <b>Selected parts</b> - the number of available levels to be added to the list depends on the selected virtual tree.</li> </ul>
Animated	When selected, animation is shown while exploding or imploding the model.
Show Arrows	When selected, arrows are displayed in an explosion assembly. The arrow starts from an exploded entity and points to the center point of its parent.
Scroll Explore	<p>Dragging the slider gradually displays the progression of the explosion to show the explosion dynamics.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Explode</b> - pressing the  button brings the explosion level to the (n-1) level if current explosion level is between n-1 (inclusive) and n level (exclusive).</li> <li>• <b>Implode</b> - pressing the  button brings the explosion level to the n level if current explosion level is between n-1 (exclusive) and n level (inclusive).</li> </ul>

## Exploding a 3D Model

1 From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Explode**.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also select **Explode** .

The Explode dialog box appears.

- 2 Select the parts that you want to explode.  
**Note:** To select more than one model part, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting. To explode the entire model, ensure that no parts are selected.
- 3 From the Maximum Depth list, select the level to which you want the model to explode.
- 4 Select **Animated** if you want to see an animated view of the explosion.  
**Note:** This option is selected by default.
- 5 Select **Show Arrows** if you want to display the arrows.
- 6 To explode the model, click the  button.  
The whole model or the select model parts explode.  
**See *Saving an Exploded View of a 3D Model***
- 7 Click **OK** to close the Explode dialog box.

The explode state remains displayed, and the **Transformation** column  in the Model Tree is updated indicating the exploded parts.

**See Also *Resetting the Transformation of a 3D Model***

## Saving an Exploded View of a 3D Model

From the Explode dialog box, you can save the exploded view of the 3D model.

- 1 Explode a 3D Model.  
**See *Exploding a 3D Model***
- 2 Click **Save View** in the Explode dialog box.  
The Add User Defined View dialog box appears.
- 3 Enter a view name.
- 4 Click **OK**.  
The view is saved and appears in the **Views** tab under the User Defined Views tree.
- 5 Click **OK** to close the Explode dialog box.  
The exploded state is saved.

**See Also *Resetting the Transformation of a 3D Model***

# User-Defined Coordinate Systems

You have the option of creating customized three-axis coordinate systems. As with the **Global Axes** and the **World Coordinate System**, the user-defined axes are represented by a red X-axis, a green Y-axis, and a yellow Z-axis.

## See *Global Axes*

When you set a User-Defined Coordinate System (UCS) as the active axes, operations such as measuring, transforming a model, or defining a viewpoint are applied with respect to these axes.

You can create multiple UCS's for a 3D file. For multiple-page 3D files, you can even set active a different UCS for each page.

## Position Options

When defining a UCS, you can define the point where you want to place the user coordinate system. The options are:

---

Position	Description
(x, y, z) Coordinates	If selected, enter a value to specify where the three axes are positioned.
Vertex	If selected, all vertices are highlighted on the model. A snap box appears when you move the cursor on a vertex. Click the vertex point where you want to place the user coordinate system. The <b>x</b> , <b>y</b> and <b>z</b> coordinate values for the vertex are displayed. The UCS axes move to the new position.
Edge	If selected, all edges are highlighted on the model. A snap box appears when you move the cursor near an edge. Click at a point on an edge where you want to place the user coordinate system. The <b>x</b> , <b>y</b> and <b>z</b> coordinate values for the edge point are displayed. The UCS axes move to the new position.

---

Position	Description
Midedge	If selected, all edges are highlighted on the model. A snap box appears when you move the cursor near the halfway point of an edge. Click at the mid-edge point where you want to place the user coordinate system. The <b>x</b> , <b>y</b> and <b>z</b> coordinate values for the mid-edge point are displayed. The UCS axes move to the new position.
Arc Center	If selected, all arcs and circles are highlighted on the model. A snap box appears when you move the cursor near the center of a circle or arc. Click on the arc center where you want to place the user coordinate system. The <b>x</b> , <b>y</b> and <b>z</b> coordinate values for the arc center are displayed. The UCS axes move to the new position.
Face	If selected, when you move the cursor along a model face, the face is highlighted. Click at a point on the face where you want to place the user coordinate system. The <b>x</b> , <b>y</b> and <b>z</b> coordinate values for the arc center are displayed. The UCS axes move to the new position.

## Orientation Options

When defining a UCS, you can define the orientation for the coordinate system. The options are:

Position	Description
(x, y, z) Coordinates	If selected, enter a value to specify the UCS orientation according to one or more of the three axes.
Edge Tangent	If selected, all edges are highlighted on the model. A snap box appears when you move the cursor near an edge. First select the axis that will determine the UCS orientation. Click at a point on an edge to define the orientation. The <b>x</b> , <b>y</b> and <b>z</b> values for the edge point are displayed. The UCS axes are reoriented to the selected edge.

---

<b>Position</b>	<b>Description</b>
Face Normal	If selected, when you move the cursor along a model face, the face is highlighted. First select the axis that will determine the UCS orientation. Click at a point on an face to define the orientation. The <b>x</b> , <b>y</b> and <b>z</b> values for the face point are displayed. The UCS axes are reoriented to the selected face.
2 Vertices	If selected, all vertices are highlighted on the model. A snap box appears when you move the cursor on a vertex. First select the axis that will determine the UCS orientation. Click two vertex points to define the orientation. The <b>x</b> , <b>y</b> and <b>z</b> values for the vertices are displayed. The UCS axes are reoriented to the selected vertices.
3 Vertices	If selected, all vertices are highlighted on the model. A snap box appears when you move the cursor on a vertex. First select the axis that will determine the UCS orientation. Click three vertex points to define the orientation. The <b>x</b> , <b>y</b> and <b>z</b> values for the vertices are displayed. The UCS axes are reoriented to the selected vertices.

---

## Defining a User Coordinate System

- 1 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Set User Coordinate System**. The User Coordinate Systems dialog box appears.
- 2 Click **New**.  
The name of the User-Defined Coordinate System (UCS1 for the first one) appears in the Coordinate Systems list.
- 3 To change the name that you want for the UCS, in the **Name** field, enter a new name.
- 4 Click the **Position** tab to define the origin of the UCS.
- 5 From the Define From list, select the point where you want the UCS axes to appear.  
**See *Position Options***
- 6 Click **Apply**.
- 7 Click the **Orientation** tab to define the orientation of the UCS.
- 8 From the Define From list, select the point where you want to orient the UCS.

**See *Orientation Options***

- 9 Click **Apply**.
- 10 To hide the UCS axes on the model, deselect the **Show Trihedron** check box.

**Note:** This option is selected by default.

- 11 Click **OK** to close the User Coordinate Systems dialog box.

**Note:** If there is more than one coordinate system for this file, select which coordinate system the new UCS will be relative to from the **Relative To** list. Otherwise, the new UCS will be calculated with respect to the World Coordinate System.

The newly active trihedral coordinate system appears bolder and larger.

**See *Activating a Coordinate System***

## Modifying a User-Defined Coordinate System

- 1 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Set User Coordinate System**.  
The User Coordinate Systems dialog box appears.
- 2 From the Coordinate Systems list, select the UCS that you want to modify.  
The settings you configured for the UCS are displayed.
- 3 To change the name, highlight the name enter the new one.
- 4 To change the position of the UCS, click the **Position** tab, then from the **Define From** list, select the point where you want the UCS axes to appear.  
**See *Position Options***
- 5 To change the orientation, click the **Orientation** tab, then from the Define From list, select the point where you want to orient the UCS.  
**See *Orientation Options***
- 6 To show the UCS axes, select **Show Trihedron**. To hide the UCS axes, deselect the check box.
- 7 To change the UCS that it is relative to, select the UCS from the Relative To list.
- 8 Click **OK** to close the User Coordinate Systems dialog box.  
If you modified the position or orientation, the UCS axes dynamically move to the new position. A change in **Show Trihedron** option will make the UCS axes appear or disappear accordingly. Additionally, a name change will display the new name in the Coordinate Systems list.

## Activating a Coordinate System

When you set a User-Defined Coordinate System (UCS) as the active axes, operations such as measuring, transforming a model, or defining a viewpoint are applied with respect to these axes.

- 1 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Set User Coordinate System**.  
The User Coordinate Systems dialog box appears.
- 2 From the Coordinate System list, select the trihedral coordinate system that you want to use.
- 3 Click **Set Active**.
- 4 Click **OK** to close the User Coordinate Systems dialog box.  
The newly active trihedral coordinate system appears bolder and larger on the model.

## Deleting a User Coordinate System

- 1 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Set User Coordinate System**.  
The User Coordinate Systems dialog box appears.
- 2 From the Coordinate System list, select the trihedral coordinate system that you want to delete.
- 3 Click **Delete**.  
**Note:** The UCS disappears from the list.
- 4 Click **OK** to close the User Coordinate Systems dialog box.

## Interference Checks

You can check for spatial interference of any two model parts.

### Interference Check Options

With the **Interference Checking** option, you can perform different interference checks. These checks are:

---

Check	Description
All Against All	Check for interference of any of the parts in the model.
Set Against the Rest	Check where a model part or set of model parts interfere with other model parts.

---

Check	Description
Set Against Itself	Check where a model part or set of model parts interfere with itself.
Set 1 Against Set 2	Check where a model part or set of model parts interfere with another model part or set of model parts.

## Performing an Interference Check

- From the **Analysis** menu, select **Check for Interference**.  
The Interference Checking dialog box appears.
- From the Scope options, select the type of interference check that you want to perform.  
**See *Interference Check Options***
- If you selected **Set Against the Rest** or **Set Against Itself**, select one or more model parts on the model or from the Model Tree.  
**Note:** To select more than one model part, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.  
The model parts appear in the Selected Set list and are highlighted on the model and in the Model Tree.  
**Note:** To clear the last set of selected model parts, click **Clear**.
- If you selected **Set 1 Against Set 2**, click the **Set 1** arrow , then select one or more model parts on the model or from the Model Tree.  
The model parts appear in the Set 1 list and are highlighted on the model and in the Model Tree.  
**Note:** To clear a selected part, press the Control key and click on the part on the model. To clear the last set of selected model parts, click **Clear**.  
Click the **Set 2** arrow , then select one or more model parts on the model or from the Model Tree.  
The model parts appear in the Set 2 list and are highlighted in a different color on the model and in the Model Tree.
- In the **Minimum Clearance Distance** field, enter a distance. The default value is 0.  
**Note:** Adding a minimum clearance distance not only checks if the two model parts interfere, but also checks if they are located within a set minimum distance.
- From the Units list, select the unit for the clearance distance.

- 7 To configure the interference check results, click **Options**.  
The Options dialog box appears.  
**See *Interference Check Options***
- 8 Click **Compute** in the Interference Checking dialog box.  
**Note:** The **Compute** button changes to **Stop**. To stop the Interference Checking process at any point, click **Stop**  
**Note:** Section plane is not taken into consideration when computing an interface check.  
When the process is complete, all the instances of interfering pairs appear in the Results list. The number of interfering pairs found appears in the Description box.  
**Note:** To view a pair's interference information, click the corresponding **Results** line. The information appears in the Description box and AutoVue zooms into the interfering area.
- 9 To save the results, click **Export**.  
The Export Results dialog box appears.
- 10 Specify the file name and the directory where you want to save the file.
- 11 Click **Save**.  
AutoVue saves the results in a **.csv** (Comma Separated Values) file.  
**Note:** To perform another interference check click **Reset**, then click the type of interference check.
- 12 Click **Close** to close the Interference Checking dialog box.

## Interference Check Results Options

With AutoVue, you can configure the results of an Interference Check. The configuration options are:

- **Actions** - provides a close-up look at how model parts interfere
- **Selected Pair** - configure if the selected pair from the Results list should display opaque, transparent or hidden
- **The Rest** - configure if the other parts of the model should display transparent or hidden while the selected pair is displayed

Option	Select	Description
Actions	Zoom To	Once the interference check is computed and a result set is selected from the list of results, AutoVue zooms to the result.

Option	Select	Description
	Show Intersection	Once the interference check is computed and a result set is selected from the list of results, AutoVue shows where the intersection of model parts occur.
Selected Pair	Opaque	The selected pair from the list of results appear opaque.
	Transparent	The selected pair from the list of results appear transparent.
	Hide	The selected pair from the list of results appear hidden.
The Rest	Transparent	The rest of the model appears transparent while the selected pair is displayed.
	Hide	The rest of the model is hidden while the selected pair is displayed.

## Comparing 3D Files

**Note:** When comparing 3D files in a non-integrated environment we recommend that you use UNC file names or the server protocol so as to ensure that all required sub-assemblies and parts are retrieved from correct paths.

For information regarding UNC file names and the server protocol, refer to the *Installation and Administration Manual*.

AutoVue provides the ability to compare two 3D files or two sets of entities from the same file or different files and display color-coded comparative data. When you compare two files, AutoVue displays a Compare Tree and three windows, the first containing the base file, the second containing the file you compared the base against, and the third containing the comparison results.

The Compare Tree displays the model's hierarchy with a State column displaying different icons representing the results of the file comparison. The icons indicate if an model part has been added , modified , moved  deleted .

In the Comparison Result window, results are displayed in different colors to differentiate the results of the file comparison. The comparison options and corresponding colors are:

Option	Color	Description
View Additions	Green	Indicates that something has been added.
View Deletions	Red	Indicates that something has been deleted.
View Unchanged	Blue	Indicates that there is no change.

To compare files:

- 1 View the base file in AutoVue.
- 2 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Compare**.  
The **File Open** dialog box appears.
- 3 Enter the file name or click **Browse** to locate the file that you want to compare with the current active file.
- 4 Click **OK**.  
AutoVue displays the Compare Tree and three windows. The first window displays the base file, the second displays the compare file, and the third displays the comparison results.
- 5 To view the properties of a modified or moved entity in the base file and in the compare file, select the modified  or moved  entity from the Compare Tree, then right-click and select **Entity 1 Properties**.  
The Entity Properties dialog box appears displaying the properties of the entity in the base file.  
**See *Entity Properties***  
Select the entity again, then right-click and select **Entity 2 Properties**.  
The Entity Properties dialog box display the properties of the entity in the compare file.
- 6 To compare the results of the entity in the base file to the compare file, select the entity from Compare Tree, then right-click and select **Compare Results**.  
The Compare Results dialog box appears.  
To view the attribute differences, click **Attributes**.  
To view the transformation difference, click **Transformation**.  
**Note:** If there are not attribute or transformation differences, the buttons are disabled.
- 7 Click **OK** to close the Compare Results dialog box.

**Note:** To maximize any of the windows, click the  button on the title bar of the window that you want to maximize. To minimize, click the  button. To restore the window, click the .

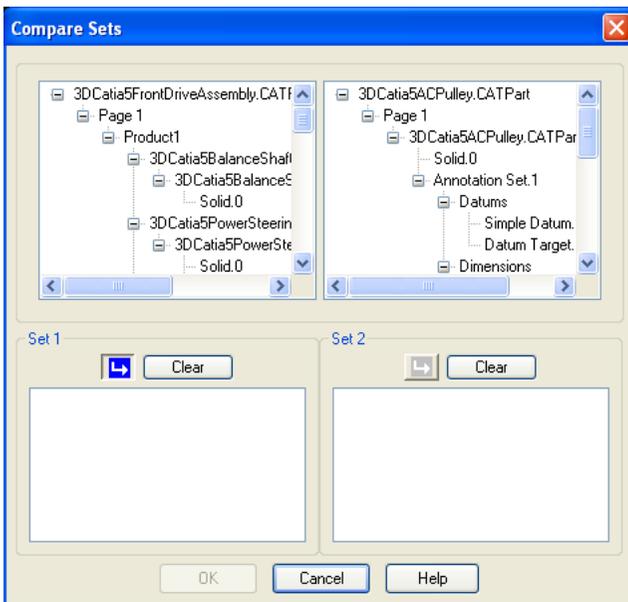
- To exit Compare mode, from the **File** menu, select **Exit Compare**. The base file appears in the workspace.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Exit Compare** .

## Comparing Entity Sets

From the file comparison, you can compare a set of entities from one file against a set of entities from the another file. You can also compare sets of entities from the same file.

- Select the files you want to compare.  
**See *Comparing 3D Files***
- From the **Analysis** menu, select **Compare Sets**. The Compare Sets dialog box appears.



- Click  **Set 1**. Set by default.

- 4 Select the entities from either the tree on the left or the tree on the right.  
**Note:** The tree on the left is the base file and the tree on the right is the compare file.  
The selected entities appear in the Set 1 list.
- 5 Click  **Set 2** point.
- 6 Select the entities from the other tree that you did not select for **Set 1**.  
The selected entities appear in the Set 2 list.  
**Note:** To compare entities from the same file, select the entities for **Set 1** and **Set 2** from either the base file or the compare file.
- 7 Click **OK**.  
The Compare Tree and the three windows are updated with the set comparison results.
- 8 To restore the comparison files, from the **Analysis** menu, select **Compare Files**.  
The files appear in the three windows.

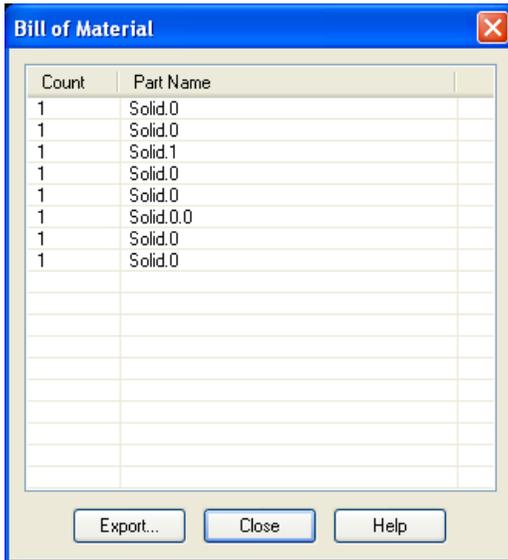
## Generating a Bill of Material

For 3D files, you can obtain a list with a count of the parts required for manufacturing the item featured in the file.

To generate a Bill of Material (BOM):

- 1 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Generate Bill of Material**.

The Bill of Material dialog box appears.



- 2 To sort the list numerically, click the **Count** column header.  
To sort the list alphabetically, click the **Part Name** column header.
- 3 To view a part or parts on the model, select the parts from the **Part Name** column.  
**Note:** To select more than one part, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.  
The parts are highlighted on the model and in the Model Tree.
- 4 To save the Bill of Material, click **Export**.  
The Export BOM dialog box appears.  
Enter a file name or browse to locate the directory where you want to store the file, then click **Save**.  
AutoVue saves the results in a **.csv** (Comma Separated Values) or **.xml** file.
- 5 Click **Close** to close the Bill of Material dialog box.

## Entity Search

AutoVue allows you to search for entities in a 3D model using the Entity Search dialog box. You can search the whole model or selected entities on the model, apply attributes, entity type or PMI filters as search criteria to filter entities. You can also search for entities by the size of an entity and location, or select entities

from the results list and have them appear highlighted in the workspace and in the Model Tree.

The **Search** options are:

Where	Option	Description
3D Search tab	Selection	Specify if you want to search the entire model or selected parts or parts that are not selected.
	Type	Specify the type of entity you want to search. For example, part, body, assembly or PMI.
	Show PMI parent entity in results	When selected, displays only the parent entity of a PMI entity that matches search criteria. If cleared, displays PMI entities that match search criteria in the Results dialog box. <b>Note:</b> Option is enabled if <b>Type</b> is set to <b>PMI</b> or <b>All</b> and file has PMI entities.
	PMI Filter	Filters the entities that have PMI information. <b>Note:</b> Option is enabled if <b>Type</b> is set to <b>PMI</b> or <b>All</b> .
	PMI Type	Specify the specific PMI attribute you want to search. <b>Note:</b> Option is disabled if <b>PMI Filter</b> is set to <b>All</b> .
Attribute Filter dialog box	Name	Specify the specific attribute you want to search. The available attributes are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Color</li> <li>• Density</li> <li>• Display_Mode</li> <li>• Filepath</li> <li>• Layer_ID</li> <li>• Mesh_Resolution</li> <li>• Name</li> <li>• Shading_Style</li> <li>• Translucency</li> <li>• Visibility</li> </ul> <b>Note:</b> Additional attributes may be available depending on the file selected.

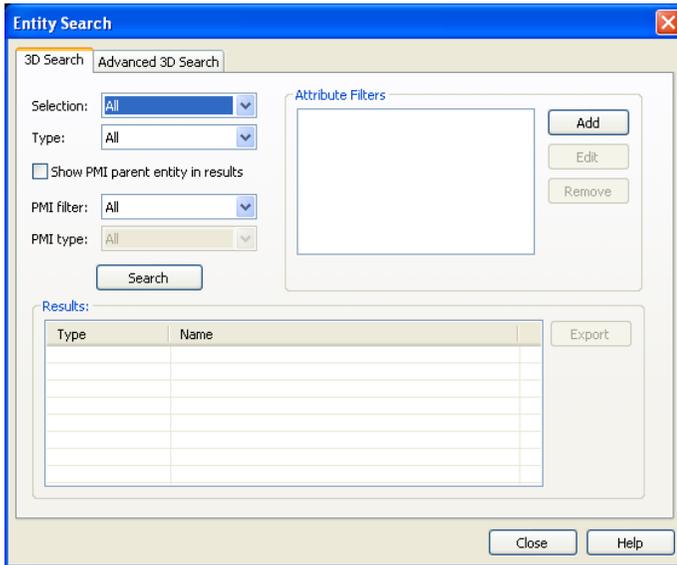
Where	Option	Description
	Any Value	When selected, AutoVue searches for any value of the selected attribute. <b>Note:</b> The attribute value options are disabled. If cleared, specify the values for the selected attribute you want to search. <b>Note:</b> The attribute value options correspond to the selected attribute.
Advanced 3D Search tab	Volume	Specify the size of an entity, the minimum and maximum dimensions. The dimensions of an entity boundary box must be between the specified dimensions to meet the search criteria.
	Location	Specify an axes aligned boundary box. The boundary box of an entity must be inside it to meet the search criteria.

## Performing a Search

- 1 From the **Edit** menu, select **Entity Search**. The Entity Search dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Entity Search** .

- 2 Click the **3D Search** tab.



- 3 From the Selection list, specify what parts of the model that you want to search.  
 To search the entire model, select **All**.  
 To search specific parts of a model, select **Selected** and then select the parts on the model.  
 To search the model parts that are not selected, select **Not selected**.
- 4 From the Type list, select the type of entity that you want to search.  
**Note:** For 3D Models that have PMI information, the PMI search features are enabled.
- 5 Select the **Show PMI parent entity in results** check box if you only want the parent entity of the selected PMI entity or entities to appear in the Results list.  
 Deselect the check box if you want all PMI entities to appear in the Results list.  
**Note:** The option is enabled if **PMI** or **All** are selected from the Type list and the file has PMI entities.
- 6 From the **PMI Filter** list, select the type of entities that you want to search.  
 To search all entities, select **All**.  
 To search entities with PMI, select **With PMI**.  
 To search entities without PMI, select **Without PMI**.

- 7 From the PMI Type list, select the type of entity that you want to search.  
**Note:** The PMI Type list is disabled if **All** is selected from the PMI Filter list.  
**See *Saving Search Results***
- 8 Click **Close** to close the Entity Search dialog box.

## Performing an Attribute-based Search

From the Entity Search dialog box, you can search for entities by their attributes, such as color, density, shading, and so on.

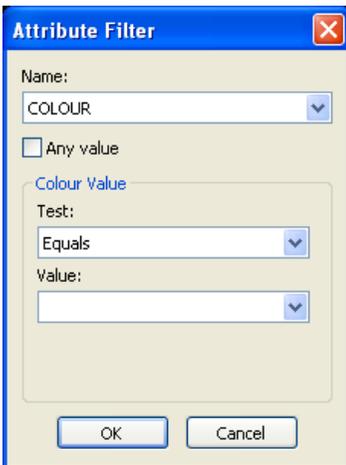
- 1 From the **Edit** menu, select **Entity Search**.  
 The Entity Search dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Entity Search** .

- 2 Click the **3D Search** tab.
- 3 Select the search criteria that you want to use for your search.

**See *Performing a Search***

- 4 Click **Add**. The Attribute Filter dialog box appears.



- 5 From the Name list, select the attribute that you want to search.  
 The Value list appears corresponding to the selected attribute.
- 6 Select the **Any Value** check box if you want to search by any value. The **Integer Value** options are disabled.
- 7 Deselect the check box if you want to search by a specific value, then from the Value list, select the values that you want to search.

- 8 Click **OK**.  
**Note:** To add more than one Attribute Filter, repeat steps 4 to 8.
- 9 To edit an Attribute Filter, select the filter and click **Edit**.  
The Attribute Filter dialog box appears allowing you to edit the filter.
- 10 To disable an Attribute Filter, deselect the check box beside the filter or filters that you want to disable.  
To enable an Attribute Filter, select the check box beside the filter or filters.
- 11 To remove an Attribute Filter, in the Entity Search dialog box, select the filter and click **Remove**.  
The Attribute Filter disappears from the list.
- 12 In the Entity Search dialog box, click **Search**.  
A list of entities matching the search criteria appear in the Results list displaying the name and type of the entities.  
**See *Saving Search Results***
- 13 Click **Close** to close the Entity Search dialog box.

## Performing an Advanced 3D Search

From the Entity Search dialog box, you can search for entities using volume or location filters. **Volume** specifies the size of the entity: you can specify the minimum and maximum dimensions an entity must be between. **Location** specifies an axes aligned boundary box: you can specify the dimensions for an axes aligned boundary box that an entity must be inside.

- 1 From the Entity Search dialog box, click the **Advanced 3D Search** tab.

The screenshot shows the 'Entity Search' dialog box with the 'Advanced 3D Search' tab selected. The dialog is divided into two main sections: 'Volume' and 'Location'.  
 In the 'Volume' section, the 'Enabled' checkbox is checked. Under 'Minimum Dimensions', the X, Y, and Z fields are set to 0. Under 'Maximum Dimensions', the X, Y, and Z fields are set to 1. The 'Completely contained' checkbox is checked, and the 'Units' dropdown is set to 'in.'. The 'Location' section has the 'Enabled' checkbox checked. Under 'Point 1', the X, Y, and Z fields are set to 0. Under 'Point 2', the X, Y, and Z fields are set to 1. The 'Fits completely' checkbox is checked, and the 'Units' dropdown is set to 'in.'. At the bottom of the dialog are 'Close' and 'Help' buttons.

- 2 To search for entities by **Volume**, select the **Enabled** check box.  
**Note:** If you want to search for entities that match all three dimensions, select the **Completely contained** check box. If the check box is deselected, then an entity only has to match one dimension in order to appear in the **Results** list.
- 3 Enter the minimum and maximum dimensions in their respective fields.
- 4 From the Units list, select the unit you want to set for the **Volume** dimensions.
- 5 To search for entities by **Location**, select the **Enabled** check box.  
**Note:** If you want to search for entities that match all three dimensions, select the **Fits completely** check box. If the check box is deselected, then an entity only has to match one dimension to appear in the Results list.
- 6 From the Units list, select the unit you want to set for the **Location** dimensions.
- 7 Enter the dimensions for **Point 1** and **Point 2**.
- 8 Click the **3D Search** tab.
- 9 Click **Search**.  
 A list of entities matching the search criteria appears in the Results list.  
**See Saving Search Results**
- 10 Click **Close** to close the Entity Search dialog box.

## Saving Search Results

- 1 Perform a 3D entity search.  
**See *Performing a Search***  
***Performing an Attribute-based Search***  
***Performing an Advanced 3D Search***
- 2 Click **Search**.  
A list of entities matching the search criteria appear in the Results list displaying the type and name.
- 3 To save the results, click **Export**.  
The Save As dialog box appears.
- 4 Specify the path where you want to store the file and enter the file name, then click **Save**.  
AutoVue saves the results in a **.csv** (Comma Separated Values) file.

## Measuring in 3D Files

AutoVue provides the ability to perform measurements in 3D files. When measuring, AutoVue provides the option to “snap” to different entity types on the model.

From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure** to access the Measurement options.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .

The following table outlines the available measuring options:

Name	Description
Angle	Measure the precise angle between any three vertices or any two edges, planes, faces or any combination of these entity types.
Arc	Measure the precise radius, length and angle of any arc and calculate the center point.
Distance	Measure the precise distance between any two vertices, edges, mid-edges, arc centers, faces or any combination of these entity types.

Name	Description
Minimum Distance	Measure minimum distance between any two vertices, edges, mid-edges, arc centers, faces or any combination of these entity types.
Edge Length	Measure the precise length of a edge.
Face Surface	Measure the precise surface area.
Vertex Coordinates	Provide the coordinates of each vertex.

## 3D Snapping Modes

The **snapping modes** available allow you to select or snap to different entity types on a model. For example, if you select **Vertex**, all vertices are highlighted and when you move the cursor over a vertex, a snap box appears.

The snapping modes allow you to snap to vertices, edges, faces, planes and arcs.

Button	Snap to	Description
	Edge	Edges are highlighted on the model. When moving the cursor over an edge, a snap circle appears.
	Face	Faces are highlighted when you move the cursor over a face and a snap triangle appears.
	Vertex	Vertices are highlighted on the model. When moving the cursor over a vertex, a snap box appears.

## Measuring Distance

Use the **Distance** option to measure the precise distance between two vertices, edges, mid-edges, arc centers, faces or any combination of these entity types.

**Note:** When measuring the distance between faces, if the faces are parallel, AutoVue compares the shortest distance between the faces.

- 1 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.  
The Measurement dialog box appears.

- Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .
- 2 Click the **Distance** tab.
  - 3 From the Measured Distance Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure.
  - 4 Click the **From**  field to select the entity type that you want to measure from.
  - 5 Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.  
**See 3D Snapping Modes**  
All entities of the selected entity type are highlighted on the model.
  - 6 On the model, select the entity you want to measure from.  
**Note:** If you want to take more than one measurement from the same starting point, click **Fix Position**.
  - 7 Click the **To**  field to select the entity type that you want to measure to.
  - 8 Select the snapping modes that you want to select as the end point for the measurement.  
All entities of the selected entity type are highlighted on the model.
  - 9 On the model, select the entity you want to measure to.  
The points are joined by a line. The measured distance, Delta X, Delta Y and Delta Z appear in the Measurement dialog box.  
**Note:** Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
  - 10 Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog box.

## Calibrating Distance

- 1 Measure a distance.  
**See Measuring Distance**
- 2 In the Measurement dialog box, click **Calibrate**.  
The Distance Calibration dialog box appears displaying the measured distance.
- 3 In the Measured Dist list, select the unit to which you want to calibrate the distance.
- 4 Select **Calibrate to** and enter a value if you want to calibrate the distance to a value.  
Select **Set Factor** and enter a value if you want to calibrate the distance by a factor.
- 5 Click **OK**.  
The calibration result appears in the Measurement dialog box.

- 6 Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog box.

## Measuring Minimum Distance

With the **Minimum Distance** option you can measure the minimum distance between model parts, as well as any two points from the selection sets: vertices, edges, mid-edges, arc centers, faces or any combination of entity types.

- 1 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.  
The Measurement dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .

- 2 Click the **Min. Distance** tab.
- 3 Click  **Set 1**.
- 4 Select **Entity** if you want to measure the distance between model parts.  
Snapping modes are disabled.  
Select **Geometry** if you want to measure the distance between entity types.  
Snapping modes are displayed.
- 5 If you selected **Entity**, select a part or parts on the model.  
The model part or parts appears in the list under **Set 1** and are highlighted on the model and in the Model Tree.  
If you selected **Geometry**, select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.

### **See 3D Snapping Modes**

All entities of the selected entity type are highlighted on the model.

Select the entity or entities on the model.

The selected entities appears in the list under **Set 1** and are highlighted on the model.

**Note:** To reset a set, click **Clear**. To clear items from a set, select the items and press the Delete key. To deselect a part or entity type on the model, press the Control key and left-click the part or entity type.

- 6 Click  **Set 2**.
- 7 Repeat step 5.  
The model part appears in the list under **Set 2**.
- 8 From the Measured Min. Distance list, select the unit in which you want to measure the distance.
- 9 Click **Compute**.  
The minimum distance from the first set of entities to the second set is highlighted by a line. The measured minimum distance, X, Y, and Z

coordinates for **Position 1** and X, Y and Z coordinates for **Position 2** appear in the Measurement dialog box.

**Note:** Click **Reset** to take another measurement.

- 10 Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog box.

## Measuring an Angle

Use the **Angle** option to measure the precise angle between any three vertices or any two edges, planes, faces or any combination of these entity types.

- 1 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.  
The Measurement dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .

- 2 Click the **Angle** tab.
- 3 Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.  
Entities of the selected types are highlighted on the model.

**See 3D Snapping Modes**

- 4 To measure the angle between an entity type and a plane, select the **With Plane** check box, and then select the plane from the list.
- 5 From the Measured Angle Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the angle.
- 6 Click two points on the model to define the angle.  
If you selected a Plane, click the vertex, edge or face whose angle you want to measure between the plane.  
Angle arms appears indicating the angle. The measurement appears in the Measurement dialog box.  
**Note:** Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
- 7 Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog box.

## Measuring an Arc

Use the **Arc** option to measure the precise radius, length and angles of any arc on the model. You can also calculate the center point location.

- 1 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.  
The Measurement dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .

- 2 Click the **Arc** tab.
- 3 Select **Arc Entity** if you want to measure a predefined arc.

All arc and circles are highlighted on the model. Snapping modes are disabled.

- 4 Select **From 3 Points** if you want to measure the arc between three points. Snapping modes are displayed. Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.  
**See 3D Snapping Modes**
- 5 From the Arc Info Dist. Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the arc distance.
- 6 From the Angles Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the angle.
- 7 If you selected **From 3 Points**, click three points to define the arc. The points are joined by an arc. The measurements for center point coordinates, radius, diameter, arc length, start and end of angle and sweep appear in the Measurement dialog box.  
If you selected **Arc Entity**, click the edge of the arc that you want to measure.  
The arc is highlighted. The measurements for center point coordinates, radius, ratio, arc length, angles start, end and sweep appear in the Measurement dialog box.  
**Note:** Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
- 8 Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog box.

## Calibrating an Arc

- 1 Measure an arc.  
**See Measuring an Arc**
- 2 In **Arc** tab, click **Calibrate**.
- 3 The Radius Calibration dialog box appears displaying the measured distance.
- 4 From the Measured Rad. list, select the unit to which you want to calibrate the distance.
- 5 Select **Calibrate to** and enter a value if you want to calibrate to a value. Select **Set Factor** and enter a value if you want to calibrate by a factor.
- 6 Click **OK**.  
The calibration results appear in the Measurement dialog box.
- 7 Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog box.

## Measuring Vertex Coordinates

The **Vertex Coordinates** option provides the coordinates of vertices on the model.

- 1 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.  
The Measurement dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .

- 2 Click the **Vertex** tab.  
All vertices on the model are highlighted.
- 3 From the Coordinates Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure.
- 4 Move the cursor over the highlighted vertex that you want to measure.  
The **X**, **Y** and **Z** coordinates appear in a tooltip.
- 5 Select the vertex.  
The **X**, **Y** and **Z** coordinates appear in the Measurement dialog box.  
**Note:** Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
- 6 Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog box.

## Measuring the Length of an Edge

Use the **Edge Length** option to measure the length of any edge on the model.

- 1 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.  
The Measurement dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .

- 2 Click the **Edge Length** tab.  
All edges on the model are highlighted.
- 3 From the Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the edge length.  
**Note:** If you want to cumulate the measurement of more than one edge, select **Cumulative**.
- 4 Click the edge that you want to measure.  
The edge length measurement appears in the Measurement dialog box.  
**Note:** Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
- 5 Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog box.

## Measuring Face Surface

Use the **Surface** option to measure the surface area of a entity face or an entire entity on the model.

- 1 From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.  
The Measurement dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .

- 2 Click the **Surface** tab.  
Select **Face Surface** if you want to measure the surface area of a face on an entity.  
Select **Entity Surface** if you want to measure the surface area of an entire entity.
- 3 From the Measure Surface Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the surface.  
**Note:** If you want to cumulate the measurement of more than one surface, click **Cumulative**.
- 4 If you selected **Face Surface**, move the cursor on the model to highlight a face surface, then click the face surface that you want to measure.  
The face surface is highlighted. The measured surface appears in the Measurement dialog box.
- 5 If you selected **Entity Surface**, click the entity that you want to measure.  
The entity, as well as all the faces belonging to the body are highlighted. The measured surface of the body appears in the Measurement dialog box.
- 6 To measure the face surface of the entity, click on the highlighted body.  
A list appears displaying the entity and its parents.  
Select the entity or a parent from the list.  
The selected entity is highlighted and the measured surface appears in the Measurement dialog box.  
**Note:** To measure the face surface of a parent, select the parent from the list.  
**Note:** Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
- 7 Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog box.

# Configuring AutoVue

Use the configuration options to configure the AutoVue workspace for different groups of file formats or for all files in general. For example, you can set different background colors for EDA, 2D, 3D, or Office files. You can also set paths to locate external resources such as fonts, symbols, or XREFS, or configure measurement options.

To access the configuration options, from the **Options** menu, select **Configure**. The **Configuration** dialog box appears. To implement your changes and to close the **Configuration** dialog box, click OK.

## See *General Options*

*Configuring AutoVue for 2D Files*

*Configuring AutoVue for 3D Files*

*Configuring AutoVue for EDA Files*

*Configuring Background Colors for Graphic Files*

*Configuring Background Colors for Desktop Office*

## General Options

To access the **General** configuration options:

- 8 From the **Options** menu, select **Configure**.  
The Configuration dialog box that appears.
- 9 Click **General** in the Category tree.  
The **CAD**, **Raster**, and **System Options** appear.

## Configuring Options for CAD Files

Configure how you want to display w.r.t. text, dimensions, line styles, and so on for CAD files:

---

<b>Option</b>	<b>Description</b>
Text	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Select to display text entities.</li><li>• Clear to hide text entities.</li></ul>
Dimensions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Select to display all dimensional entities.</li><li>• Clear to hide simple dimension entities.</li></ul>

---

Option	Description
Line Weights	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select to display varying line thicknesses.</li> <li>Clear to make all lines appear equal, with a width of 1 pixel. No line weights display for any line.</li> </ul>
Force to Black	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select to force all colors of a drawing to black.</li> <li>Clear to display the file in color.</li> </ul>
Line Style	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select to display dotted and dashed lines.</li> <li>Clear to display all lines as solid.</li> </ul>
Filling	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select to display filled entities as filled rather than just an outline.</li> <li>Clear to hide filling for filled entities.</li> </ul>
Load External References	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select to load Xrefs automatically.</li> <li>Clear to keep Xrefs from loading automatically.</li> </ul>

## Raster Files

Choose how you want the raster file to display:

- Select **Full Resolution** to display raster files at full resolution.
- Select **Fit to Window** to display raster files to fit the current window.

## Rendering

When **Enable Look Ahead** is selected and you zoom into a part of a file, AutoVue renders adjacent tiles. The advantage to this is improvement in performance when zooming in on parts of a file. The disadvantage is that if the client machine is idle for at least one second, **Enable Look Ahead** is triggered which could slow down current operations. However, once all tiles are rendered, all zoom operations speed up again.

If **Enable Look Ahead** is deselected, AutoVue renders the tiles when requested, that is, only when you zoom in on parts of the file.

## Resources

Select the **Resolve Local Resources** check box to enable client-side searching of XRefs (also know as XRef callback).

Deselect the check box to disable XRef callback.

## Configuring Paths

Configure the paths for XRefs and fonts.

When working with files that need external resources, such as fonts or XRefs, you may need to specify the path to these external resources if they do not exist in the same location as the base file.

Path	Description
XRefs	The directory paths for any external reference files associated with 2D, 3D or EDA files. <b>See <i>Configuring XRef Paths</i></b>
Font	The directory paths for fonts required by AutoVue's vector files. <b>See <i>Configuring Font Paths</i></b>

## Configuring XRef Paths

**XRef Paths** are the directory paths for any external reference files associated with 2D, 3D, or EDA files.

- 10 From the Category tree, expand **General**, and then select **XRef Paths**.
- 11 Click **Add**.  
The Add Path dialog box appears.
- 12 Enter the directory path, or scroll to locate the directory where the external reference files are located.  
To browse all subdirectories below the current path, type two asterisks\*\* at the end of the file path.  
For example, **C:\samples\\*\*** results in browsing all subdirectories below "samples".  
To browse one subdirectory below the current path, type one asterisk \* at the end of the file path.  
For example, **C:\samples\\*** results in browsing one subdirectory below "samples".
- 13 Click **OK**.  
The directory path appears.  
**Note:** To add more than one path to the list, repeat steps 3 to 5.
- 14 To change the order, select the path you want to move, then click **Up** or **Down** to move the path to where you want it in the list.
- 15 To remove a path, select the path and click **Remove**.
- 16 Click **OK** to close the Configuration dialog.

## Configuring Font Paths

**Font Paths** are the directory paths for fonts required by 2D, 3D, EDA, or Office files.

- 17 From the Category tree, expand **General**, and then select **Font Paths**.
- 18 Click **Add**.  
The Add Path dialog box appears.
- 19 Enter the directory path or scroll to locate the directory where the external font files are located.  
To browse all subdirectories below the current path, type two asterisks \*\* at the end of the file path.  
For example, **C:\samples\\*\*** will result in browsing all subdirectories below “samples”.  
To browse one subdirectory below the current path, type one asterisk \* at the end of the file path.  
For example, **C:\samples\\*** will result in browsing one subdirectory below “samples”.
- 20 Click **OK**.  
The directory path appears.  
**Note:** To add more than one path to the list, repeat steps 3 to 5.
- 21 To change the order, select the path you want to move, then click **Up** or **Down** to move the path to where you want it in the list.
- 22 To remove a path, select the path and click **Remove**.  
The selected path disappears from the list.
- 23 Click **OK** to close the Configuration dialog box.

## Measurement

The **Measurement** options let you define the default measurement units and the number of decimal places.

From the Category tree, expand **General**, and then select **Measurement** to display the options you need.

The available options are as follows:

Option	Description
Decimal Digits	Lets you specify the number of decimal digits displayed for each measurement. Enter a number from 1 to 18.

---

Option	Description
Default File Units	Lets you specify the units for displaying.
Measurement Units	Lets you specify the default unit for measuring.

---

## Configuring the Base Font for Text Files

The **Base Font** option lets you define the font properties for text files.

- 24 From the Category tree, expand **General**, and then select **Base Font**.
- 25 Select a font from the Font list.
- 26 Select a font size from the Size list.
- 27 Select the **Bold** option, **Italic** option, or both options to change the font style.  
**Note:** You can see a preview of the text in the Sample area.
- 28 Click **OK** to apply the font change and close the Configuration dialog box.

**Note:** The font changes will only apply to text files.

## Configuring AutoVue for 2D Files

You can configure background color and snap settings for 2D files.

- 29 From the **Options** menu, select **Configure**.
- 30 The Configuration dialog box appears.
- 31 From the Category tree, select **2D**.  
The **Snap Settings** option appears.

## Snap Settings

In measurement mode, when you move the cursor within a predetermined snap radius, the snap box appears for the entity to be selected. To change the snap radius, change the value in the **Snap Radius** field. The snap radius is configured in pixels.

## Configuring Colors

The **Colors** settings let you modify colors for 2D files.

From the Category tree, expand **2D**, and then select **Colors** to display the following options:

Option	Description
Background	Change the color of the background for 2D files.
Measurement	Modify the color you want displayed when taking measurements on 2D files.

## Configuring AutoVue for 3D Files

In AutoVue, there are configuration options that you can set to customize the work environment when working with 3D files.

- 32 From the **Options** menu, select **Configure**.  
The Configuration dialog box appears.
- 33 From the Category tree, select **3D**.  
The **Rendering**, **Dynamic Rendering**, and **Frame Rate** options appear.

## Rendering

The **Rendering** options let you modify the manner in which the model is rendered. Changing these options affects the level of detailed displayed. The **Rendering** options are:

Option	Description
Smooth Shading	Set by default. Turning this option off renders curved surfaces of shaded models as a series of flat surfaces. The level of detail is thus reduced but render speed is increased. <b>Note:</b> Only affects shaded models.
Back-Face Removal	If selected, instructs AutoVue not to render the back faces of the model being displayed. This increases the render speed but the model appears less realistic while in motion. <b>Note:</b> Only affects shaded models.
Tristrip	If selected, enable/disable tristripping of mesh data for display.

## Dynamic Rendering

The **Dynamic Rendering** options let you select the rendering mode for a model in motion. The options you can select are:

Menu Option	Description
Fast Frame	Model spins or rotates at a fast rate. The level of detail is reduced, which enables faster rendering when the model is in motion.
Wire Frame	Model is displayed as wire framed during rotation or spinning.
Flat Shading	Smooth shading is not performed on curved surfaces while the model is in motion.
Wire Polygons	Render the model in wire polygon mode while in motion.
Vertex Cloud	Model is displayed as a skeleton of vertices when in motion.
Bounding Box	Model parts are enclosed by bounding boxes when the model is in motion.
Current Render Mode	Model is rendered in the same mode whether moving or static.

## Frame Rate

The **Frame Rate** slider lets you define the frame rate for rotating and dynamic zooming on 3D files. Drag the slider to specify the frame rate. Drag the slider to the left for a lower frame rate and to the right for a higher frame rate.

**Note:** A higher frame rate results in a lower resolution.

## Model

The **Model** configuration options let you control the streaming method, the dynamic load mesh resolution, and the visibility of model parts.

From the Category tree, expand **3D**, and then select **Model** to load the **Loading**, **Dynamic Load Mesh Resolution**, **Initial Visibility**, and **PMI Initial Visibility** options.

## Loading

Control the streaming method with the **Dynamic Loader** option.

When the option is selected, AutoVue loads enough detail to display an accurate visual representation of the model. The data is loaded based on the level of detail that is necessary at that point in time.

When the option is deselected, AutoVue requests data in 10% chunks until it reaches full resolution for the file. You would see the model initially at coarse resolution, but continuously refining.

**Note:** For more information, refer to *System Administration Guide*.

## Dynamic Load Mesh Resolution

Control the initial resolution with the **Dynamic Load Mesh Resolution** slider.

When you select **Dynamic Loader**, you can control the initial resolution by setting the **Dynamic Load Mesh Resolution**. When you set the Dynamic Load Mesh Resolution to High, the file displays at a higher resolution when you zoom, resulting in a smoother look.

**Note:** For more information, refer to the *Installation and Administration Manual*.

## Initial Visibility

With the **Initial Visibility** options, you can specify the visibility of model parts when first opening a 3D file.

Option	Description
Default Visibility	Load model with default visibility options.
All Visible	Force all parts ON in the display.
All Invisible	Force all parts OFF in the display. <b>Note:</b> To display model parts, select the part(s) from the Model Tree.

## PMI Initial Visibility

With the **PMI Initial Visibility** option, you have the option to set a threshold for the number of PMIs to display for large models. To do, select the **Don't display**

**PMI for large models** check box, and then enter the number of PMIs to display in the **PMI Threshold** field.

## PMI Filtering

From the Category tree, expand **3D**, and then select **PMI** to display the PMI options.

The **PMI Filtering** options let you configure which types of product and manufacturing information to display. The check boxes in the **Tree** column let you select which PMI entity types display in the 3D model tree. The check boxes in the **View** column let you select which PMI entity types display in the workspace.

### See PMI Filtering

The following **PMI Text Rendering Style** options let you define the style for the PMI text:

Option	Description
Native Setting (from file)	PMI text is displayed with the default setting
3D	PMI text is displayed in 3 dimension
Flat-to-screen	PMI text is displayed in 2 dimension

## Configuring Colors

With the **Colors** option, you can configure the color to allow easier viewing of 3D file details.

From the Category tree, expand **3D**, and then select **Colors** to display the Common, Section Highlight, and Geometry Highlight options.

---

## Common

---

Option	Description
Background	Set the background color for 3D files.
Selection	Set the color when selecting a model or model parts.
Entity Default	Set the default color to use when the model color is not readable.
Measurement	Set the color for measurements.
Min. Distance Set 1	Set the color of the first set-point when measuring minimum distance.
Min. Distance Set 2	Set the color of the second set-point when measuring minimum distance.

---

## Section Highlight

---

Option	Description
Edges	Set the color for the section edges when defining Section Cut Options.
Fill	Set the fill color when defining Section Cut Options.

---

## Geometry Highlight

---

Option	Description
Vertex	Set the color for vertices when highlighted during measurement and markup.
Face	Set the color for faces when highlighted during measurement and markup.
Edge	Set the color for edges when highlighted during measurement and markup.

---

## Configuring Background

With the **Background** options, you can select a gradient or an image to display in the background.

From the Category tree, expand **3D**, and then select **Background**. The Background Gradient and Background Images options appear.

For the *Background Gradient* option, you can select either **Plain**, **Directional Gradient**, or **Radial Gradient**. The background is previewed to the right of the options.

For the *Background Images* option, do the following:

- 1 Click Add.  
The Background Image dialog box appears.
- 2 Click on the ellipses to the right of the Image File field to browse to the image file.  
**Note:** You can only select **.bmp**, **.jpeg**, or **.img** files.
- 3 From the Stretch Type list, select whether to leave the image as is, **Stretch to fill**, **Zoom to fit**, or **Zoom to fill**.
- 4 From the Position in the Background list, select where to position the image.
- 5 Click **OK** when done.  
The Background Image dialog box closes.

**Note:** The selected Background is implemented when you click **OK** in the Configuration dialog box.

## Miscellaneous

In the **Configuration** dialog box, select **3D > Miscellaneous** in the tree to display the **Display**, **Model Tree**, **Manipulator**, and **Selection** options.

## Display

The **Show Global Axes** option is active by default. Disable this option to remove the axes that display in the bottom-right corner of the workspace.

## Model Tree

Enter a different value in the **Tree Level** field to define the level at which you want the **Model Tree** to collapse when opening a 3D file. The default is 3 levels.

## Manipulator

Select the **Align with current UCS** option to automatically align the manipulators with the current User-Defined Coordinate System.

## Selection

The following **Selection** options let you define how AutoVue indicates that an object is selected.

---

Option	Description
Highlight Bounding Box	Selection is enclosed in a wireframe box.
Highlight Entity	Selection is indicated by changing color.

---

# Configuring AutoVue for EDA Files

In AutoVue, there are configuration options that allow you to customize your work environment when working with EDA files. To access the EDA configuration options, from the **Options** menu, select **Configure**. In the **Configuration** dialog box that appears, click **EDA** in the tree.

## Customizing Selections

Configure how you want selected components to be highlighted.

From the Configuration tree, select **EDA**. There are two selection options: **Highlight Entity** and **Dim Unselected**.

### Highlight Entity

Activate this option to highlight all entities that you select. This option is enabled by default.

**Note:** The default highlight color is yellow.

**See *Modifying Colors***

## Dim Unselected

Activate this option to dim all the entities that are not selected. Selected entities retain their original entity color.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Dim Unselected** .

When you select Dim Unselected, you can set the dimness level for entities that are not selected. Drag the slider to the right to increase the dimness level and to the left to decrease the dimness level. The icon to the right of the dimness settings in the Configuration dialog box lets you preview the dimness level.

Additionally, with Dim Unselected, you can select the **Thicken Highlighted Entity** to check box. This option makes the selected entity appear more pronounced. Deselect the check box to return the entity to its default thickness.

## Displaying Tooltips

When you hover the mouse over an entity, a tooltip appears to show you information about the entity. You can disable or enable these tooltips.

When the option is selected, AutoVue automatically retrieves the entity information from the server. Clear this option if you do not want this behavior every time your mouse hovers over an entity.

- 6 Select **EDA** in the tree.
- 7 Under the Mouse Hover heading, select or deselect the **Show Entity Information Tooltip** check box.
- 8 Click **OK**.

## Modifying 3D View

You can configure the 3D PCB view of EDA files.

**Note:** The Default Board Thickness and Component Height values are read-only if the EDA 3D file does not contain board and component information.

- 1 Select **EDA** in the tree.
- 2 Enter a value in the **Default Board Thickness** field to change the board's thickness.

**Note:** The Default Board Thickness option only affects boards that have no board thickness defined in the design. If a board has a defined thickness, this option does not affect that board.

- 3 Enter a value in the **Default Component Height** field to change the component height.

**Note:** The Default Component Height option affects components that do not have height defined in the design. If a component has a defined height, this option does not affect that component.

- 4 To work with a different unit of measurement, select another unit from the **Default Units** menu. This is the unit of measurement used for values set in the Default Board Thickness and Default Component Height fields.
- 5 Reload the file to see your changes.

## Synchronizing Layers when Comparing Files

When you compare files, you can synchronize all layer settings. When the layer settings are synchronized, changing one setting changes the same setting for both files you are comparing.

- 1 From the Category tree, select **Analysis**.
- 2 Select the **Layer Settings** check box to synchronize all layer settings when comparing files.

**Note:** This option is only applicable for PCB drawings.

## Configuring Zoom Behavior when Cross Probing

You can configure the zoom options when you cross probe files.

- 1 From the Category tree, select **Analysis**.
- 2 Select one of the following Cross Probe options:
  - Click **Keep Current Zoom Level**. When this option is active, the view of the target files remains the same while you cross probe.
  - Click **Zoom Selected** to automatically zoom in on selected entities while you cross probe. This option is enabled by default.
  - Click **Zoom Fit** to automatically adjust the contents of a file along the horizontal or vertical axis to fully display within the current window.
- 3 Click **OK**.

## Modifying Colors

You can configure the colors for EDA files.

Select **EDA > Colors** in the tree.

The options that you can configure are grouped under Common and 3D View as follows:

## Common

---

Option	Description
Background	Change the background color for EDA files.
Selection	Configure the color used to highlight entities.
Min. Distance Set 1	Configure the color of the first selection set point when measuring minimum distance.
Min. Distance Set 2	Configure the color of the second selection set point when measuring minimum distance.

---

## 3D View

---

Option	Description
Default Board Color	Configure the color of the board in 3D view.
Default Component Color	Configure the component color in 3D view.

---

# Configuring Background Colors for Graphic Files

Specify background colors for mono raster files and color raster files.

- 1 From the **Options** menu, select **Configure**.  
The Configuration dialog box that appears.
- 2 Select **Graphics** in the tree.
- 3 From their respective Background lists, select colors for mono raster files and color raster files.

# Configuring Background Colors for Desktop Office

Specify background colors for the following types of Desktop Office files:

- Document
  - Spreadsheet
  - Database
  - Archive
- 
- 1 From the **Options** menu, select **Configure**.  
The Configuration dialog box appears.
  - 2 Select **Desktop Office** in the tree.
  - 3 Select a background color for each Desktop Office file type.

# Markups

AutoVue has the ability to view hundreds of different file formats and to create markups for all its readable file formats without the document's authoring application.

Marking up refers to drawing and writing on an electronic document. AutoVue provides the ability to markup different formats without modifying the original file. When you create a markup for a file, the markup is created on top of the original file. Markups are saved in separate files.

**Note:** When you are creating a markup entity, you can press the **Escape** key to cancel.

If a file has existing Markup files, the **Markup Indicator** icon  appears on the status bar at the bottom of the AutoVue workspace. Clicking this button opens the Markup Files dialog box allowing you to select Markup files to open or create a new Markup file. When you open a Markup file, AutoVue layers the markup over the original file.

In Markup mode you can:

- Create entities such as text, arcs, boxes, circles, clouds, lines, arrows, and polygons.
- Add a stamp or information to an entity by adding a text or a note.
- Create, name, and color layers to organize your work.
- Create a new Markup file that combines copies of selected layers of different Markup files.
- Create measurement markup entities that can be moved or resized.
- Navigate markups through a hierarchy tree, view markup properties, and sort the tree according to each property.
- View markup layers individually or in combination.

**Note:** Markup capability is only available in certain versions of the AutoVue product. For more information, refer to the *Product Variations Checklist*.

**Note:** By default, markups are disabled for Office documents. For information on how to enable markups for Office documents, refer to the “INI Options” chapter in the *Installation and Administration Manual*.

# Markup Navigation Tree

When you are in Markup mode, a **Markup Navigation Tree** appears below the workspace. If the tree does not appear, from the **Options** menu, select **Show Panel**, and then select **Markup Panel**.

Markup Entity	Author	Last Modified 	Page	Layer
  <b>Untitled2</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> Text</li> <li> Leader</li> <li> brnb</li> <li> Highlight</li> <li> Box</li> <li> Line</li> </ul>	JohnDoe	04/09/2008 11:51:06 AM	1	0
	JohnDoe	04/09/2008 11:51:08 AM	1	0
	JohnDoe	04/09/2008 11:51:22 AM	1	0
	JohnDoe	04/09/2008 11:51:24 AM	1	0
	JohnDoe	04/09/2008 11:51:29 AM	1	0
	JohnDoe	04/09/2008 11:51:31 AM	1	0

The tree displays a hierarchy tree of markups or comments created by users. You can navigate through the markups. A set of properties are generated for each markup. You can sort the markups in the tree according to each property by clicking the column headers. These properties are:

Property	Description
Markup Entity	Type of markup entity created.
Author	The name of the user who created the markup.
Last Modified	The date and time the markup was modified.
Page	Page number of the original document on which the markup entity is created.
Layer	Markup layer on which the markup entity is created.

When a markup entity is created, it appears in the tree and the information is recorded and saved in the Markup file.

**Note:** Hover your mouse over an entity to displays its *author* and *date* properties.

# Filtering Markups

When viewing markups, you have the option to filter the Markup files or entities that are displayed based on their metadata information.

To do so, from the **Markup** menu, select **Filter**. The Filter Markup Visibility dialog box appears and displays the following options: Author, Entity Types, Last Modified, Page, and Layer.

**Note:** From the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also click **Markup Filter**



- To display markups created by a specific author, click the **Author** tab and select the check box next to the author's name. To remove an author's markup from the filter, deselect the associated check box. In the Markup Navigation Tree, a filter icon appears in the Author column header.
- To display markups by entity type, click the **Entity Types** tab and select the check box next to the markup entity or entities. To remove a markup entity from the filter, deselect the associated check box. In the Markup Navigation Tree, a filter icon appears in the Markup Entity column header.
- To display markups based on when they were last modified, click the **Last Modified** tab. From the list, select one of the following options:
  - **Anytime:** Displays all markup entities.
  - **Before:** Displays all markup entities modified before the selected date.
  - **After:** Displays all markup entities modified after the selected date.
  - **On:** Displays all markup entities modified on the selected date.
  - **Between:** Displays all markup entities modified between the selected dates.

In the Markup Navigation Tree, a filter icon appears in the Last Modified column header.

- To display markups by page location, click the **Page** tab and select one of the following:
  - **All pages:** Displays markup entities on all the pages.
  - **Current page:** Displays markup entities on the currently selected page.
  - **Page ranges:** Displays the markup entities on the selected page range.

In the Markup Navigation Tree, a filter icon appears in the Page column header.

- To display markups by layers, click the **Layer** tab and select the check box next to the layer or layers. To remove a layer from the filter, deselect the associated check box. In the Markup Navigation Tree, a filter icon appears in the Layer column header.

**Note:** To remove the filters, from the **Markup** menu, select **Filter**, and then select **Show All**.

## Working with Markup Files

AutoVue provides the ability to markup different formats without modifying the original file. When you create a markup for a file, the markup is created on top of the original file. Markups can be saved as separate **Markup files** while working with the same document. You have the option to add user information to the Markup file, save and create separate Markup files with different markup IDs, import and export Markup files, or change the active Markup file.

### Saved States

When you create and save a Markup file, you also save the view state, such as the zoom level at which you are working. If you save the Markup file while you are working at your preferred zoom level, the next time you open the Markup file, it displays at the same zoom level. Some examples of view states include zoom level (extents), rotation and flip settings, transformation, section plane, and visibility. When creating markups for 3D files containing imported models, the imported design becomes part of the view state. For EDA files, you can save user-defined layers with markups.

#### See **Creating a User-Defined View**

State information is also saved with each markup entity. For instance, if you were at a certain zoom level when you created a markup entity, AutoVue saves the information with the markup entity. To “Go To” the state you were at when you created or modified the markup entity, from the tree, right-click the markup entity and select **Go To**.

## Creating a Markup File

To create a Markup file:

- 1 View a file that you want to markup.
- 2 From the **Markup** menu, select **New**.

AutoVue enters Markup mode and a new Markup file appears in the Markup Navigation Tree.

**Note:** From the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also click **New**

**Markup** 

See Also *Creating a Markup Layer*

## Entering Markup Information

When creating a markup you can provide user information that you can save with the markup.

From the **Markup** menu, select **Properties**. The Markup Information dialog box appears.

Enter a user name, department, company name, company location, and telephone number. Click **OK** to save your markup information and to close the dialog box.

## Saving a New Markup File

To save a new Markup file:

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Save**.  
The Save Markup File As dialog box appears displaying the Markup Information that you entered when creating the markup.

**Note:** From the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also click **Save**

**Markup** .

- 2 In the **Markup ID** field, enter an ID consisting of any combination of characters or numbers.
- 3 Click **OK**.

The Markup file is saved. The markups and the Markup file remain displayed in the workspace and in the Markup Navigation tree.

## Opening Markup Files

To open a Markup file:

- 1 View a file that has existing markups.
- 2 From the **Markup** menu, select **Open**.  
The Markup Files dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Open Markup(s)**

, or from the bottom-left corner of the status bar, you can click **Markup**

**Indicator** .

**Note:** If the Markup Indicator icon does not display, then the file you opened has no existing markups associated to it.

- 3 From the Markup list, select the check box next to Markup file you want to open.  
**Note:** If you select more than one Markup file, the Active Markup menu lets you select which one of them is initially active.
- 4 Click **OK**.  
The selected markup or markups appear in the workspace on top of the original file.  
**Note:** When you select more than one Markup file, the markups display simultaneously.  
**See Also** *Setting the Active Markup File*

## Saving an Existing Markup File

To save a modified existing Markup file, from the **Markup** menu, select **Save**.

**Note:** From the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also click **Save Markup**



If you have multiple markups open that you have modified and want to save them all, from the **Markup** menu, select **Save All**.

To save an existing markup as a new markup, from the **Markup** menu, select **Save As**.

## Importing a Markup File

To import a Markup file on top of the original file:

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Open**.  
The Markup Files dialog box appears.  
**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Open Markup(s)**
- 
- 2 Click **Import**.  
The Select Markup File to Import dialog box appears.
  - 3 Navigate to the markup file that you want to import and select it.
  - 4 Click **Open**.  
The imported Markup file appears in the workspace on top of the original file.

## Exporting a Markup File

To export a Markup file:

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Save As**.  
The Save Markup File As dialog box appears.

**Note:** For a new Markup file, you can also click **Save Markup** .

- 2 Click **Export**.  
The Save As dialog box appears.
- 3 Navigate to the location where you want to export the Markup file.
- 4 Enter file name.
- 5 Click **Save**.  
The Markup file is exported to the selected directory.

The default format saved is *Markup Files (\*.\*)*, but you can select another one. In the Save as Type list, there are six formats to choose from:

- Markup Files (\*.\*)
- DXF Output (\*.dxf)
- AutoCAD DWG R12 (\*.dwg)
- AutoCAD DWG R13 (\*.dwg)
- AutoCAD DWG 14 (\*.dwg)
- Microstation DGN Output (\*.dgn)

## Setting the Active Markup File

A file can have several Markup files. When you open several Markup files simultaneously, you can set one as the active Markup file. Any changes you make is applied to the current active markup.

- 6 From the **Markup** menu, select **Open**.  
The Markup Files dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Open Markup(s)**



, or from the bottom-left corner of the status bar, you can click **Markup**

**Indicator** .

**Note:** If the Markup Indicator icon does not display, the file you opened has no existing markups associated to it.

- 7 From the Markup list, select the markup or markups you want to open.
- 8 From the Active Markup list, select the markup you want to make active.

**Note:** An active markup displays in bold in the Markup Navigation Tree.

- 9 Click **OK**.

The selected markups appear in the AutoVue workspace.

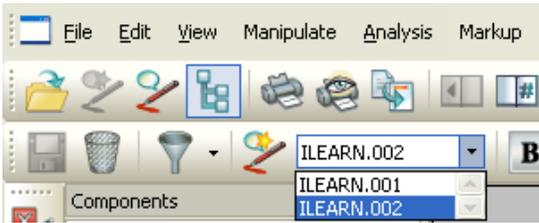
## Changing the Active Markup File

When you have multiple Markup files open, you can change the active markup.

**Note:** An active markup displays in bold in the Markup Navigation Tree.

Take one of the following steps:

- In the tree, right-click the name of the Markup file you want to make active, then select **Set Active**.
- From the Markup toolbar, you can set the active markup by selecting a markup from the list on the Markup Properties toolbar.



- Take the following steps:
  - a. From the **Markup** menu, select **Set Active**.  
The Set Active Markup dialog box appears.
  - b. From the Select Active Markup list, select the markup you want to make active.
  - c. Click **OK** to make the selected Markup file active.

## Working with Markup Layers

Markup files can be divided into layers with each layer having its own unique name. You can create, name, and color layers to organize your work. For example, different colors can indicate time priorities and each layer can contain markups relating to a common purpose.

When working with markup layers, you can view layers individually or in combination, add, rename, or delete layers. You can also specify a different color for each layer.

**Note:** The default layer color is red.

*See **Moving a Markup Entity to Another Layer***

## Creating a Markup Layer

From the Markup Layers dialog box, you can create a markup layer.

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Markup Layers**.  
The Markup Layers dialog box appears.
- 2 Click **New**.  
The New Markup Layer dialog box appears.
- 3 Enter a name for the markup layer.
- 4 Click **OK**.  
The new markup layer is added to the list in the Markup Layers dialog box.
- 5 To change the color of the new layer, click **Color**.  
The Layer Color dialog box appears.  
**Note:** The default layer color is red.
- 6 Select a color and click **OK**.
- 7 Click **OK** to close the Markup Layers dialog box.

## Setting the Active Markup Layer

A markup can have several layers and you can set a layer as the active markup layer. When a markup layer is active, all modifications you make are applied to that markup layer. There are two ways in which to set a layer as active:

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Markup Layers**.  
The Markup Layers dialog box appears.
- 2 From the Markup Layers list, select the layer you want to make active.
- 3 Click **Set Active**.
- 4 Click **OK**.

**or**

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Markup Layers**.  
The Markup Layers dialog box appears.
- 2 From the Currently Active Layer list, select the layer you want to make active.
- 3 Click **OK**.

## Changing the Color of a Markup Layer

After you create a markup layer, you have the option to the change color of its markup entities.

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Markup Layers**.  
The Markup Layers dialog box appears.

- From the Markup Layers list, select the markup layer that you want to change the color.
- Click **Color**.  
The Layer Color dialog box appears.
- Select a **Color**.
- Click **OK**.

**Note:** Only the entities that were created with the *Bylayer*  color defined in the Markup Layers dialog box will change color. Any entities that were created using the color options from the Markup Properties toolbar, will override the Bylayer  color and will not change color.

**See *Assigning a Markup Entity the Same Color as the Layer***

- Click **OK** to close the Markup Layers dialog box.  
**See Also *Working with Markup Entities***

## Renaming a Markup Layer

After you create a markup layer, you have the option to rename the layer.

- From the **Markup** menu, select **Markup Layers**.  
The Markup Layers dialog box appears.
- From the Markup Layers list, select the markup layer you want to rename.
- Click **Rename**.  
The New Markup Layer dialog box appears.
- Enter the new layer name.
- Click **OK**.  
The markup layer is assigned the new name.
- Click **OK** to close the Markup Layers dialog box.

## Toggling between Markup Layers

From the Markup Layers dialog box, you can choose to show or hide a layer and its associated markup entities.

- From the **Markup** menu, select **Markup Layers**.  
The Markup Layers dialog box appears.
- To show/hide a layer or layers:
  - Select a layer and click **Toggle**. The layer's check box will switch between selected and deselected. To view all the markup layers, click **All On**. To hide all markup layers click **All Off**.

or

- From the Markup Layers list, select the check box next to the layer or layers you want visible, and deselect the check box next to the layer or layers you want to hide.
- 3 Click **OK**.  
The markup entities belonging to the selected layer or layers appear in the workspace on top of the original file.

## Deleting a Markup Layer

From the Markup Layers dialog box, you can choose to delete a selected layer and its associated markup entities.

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Markup Layers**.  
The Markup Layers dialog box appears.
- 2 From the Markup Layers list, select the markup layer you want to delete.
- 3 Click **Delete**.
- 4 Click **OK**.  
The layer or layers are deleted along their associated entities.

## Moving a Markup Entity to Another Layer

Once you create a markup entity, it is possible to assign it to a pre-existing markup layer.

- 1 Select the markup entity or entities that you want to move.
- 2 From the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Move to Layer**.  
The Move to Layer dialog box appears.

**Note:** You can also right-click the markup entity, select **Format**, and then select **Move to Layer**.

- 3 From the Layers list, select the destination layer.
- 4 Click **OK**.

The selected markup entity or entities are moved to the selected layer.

**Note:** Only the markup entities that were created with the layer color defined in the Markup Layers dialog box will change color. Any entities that were created using the color options from the Markup Properties toolbar, will override the layer color and will not change color.

**See Also** *Working with Markup Entities*

# Consolidating Markup Files

The **Consolidate** option allows you to create a new Markup file that combines copies of selected layers of different Markup files. During the review cycle, consolidation simplifies document revisions by providing the author with one combined Markup file instead of several Markup files.

**Note:** The Consolidate option is only active when more than one Markup file is opened.

- 1 Open the Markup files that you want to consolidate.
- 2 From the **Markup** menu, select **Consolidate**.  
The Consolidate Markups dialog box appears.
- 3 Select the markup layers that you want to consolidate into one file. To select multiple layers, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.

**Note:** To select all the layers click **Select All**, and to deselect all the layers click **UnSelect All**.

- 4 In the **Output ID** field, enter an ID for the new Markup file.
- 5 If you want to open the newly consolidated markup as the active markup, select the **Open as Active Markup** check box.
- 6 Click **OK**.

The consolidated Markup file is saved. If you selected **Open as Active Markup**, the consolidated markup opens and is set as the active markup.

# Marking up 2D and 3D Files

AutoVue provides a number of markup options that display the same behavior when marking up 2D or 3D files. You can add markup entities such as attachments, hyperlinks, signoffs, and stamps.

**Note:** When you are creating a markup entity, you can press the **Escape** key to cancel.

The following tables lists common markup entities for 2D and 3D files. For markup entities that are specific to 2D and 3D files, refer to the **2D-Specific Markups** and **3D-Specific Markups** sections, respectively.

Option	Description
Attachment	<p>Add an attachment entity to the markup. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Attachment</b></p>  <p><b>See Adding an Attachment</b></p>
Hyperlink	<p>Click the workspace to attach a hyperlink. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Hyperlink</b></p>  <p><b>See Adding a Hyperlink</b></p>
Intellistamp	<p>Add a stamp on a document in a connected and disconnected environment. Includes specific document and user information (metadata) pulled directly from the DMS/ERP/PLM/UCM system. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Intellistamp</b></p>  <p>Refer to the <i>AutoVue Mobile User Manual</i>.</p>
Signoff	<p>Create an approval stamp containing information about the markup author, date and time of creation.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Signoff</b></p>  <p><b>See Adding Signoff Entities</b></p>
Stamp	<p>Click and drag a stamp from the dialog box to the workspace.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Stamp</b></p>  <p><b>See Adding a Stamp</b></p>

**See Also** **2D-Specific Markups**  
**3D-Specific Markups**

## Adding an Attachment

In AutoVue, you can attach a file of any type (for example, text, audio, or video) as a markup entity. The attachment is embedded into the markup entity and displays as an icon the display.

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Attachment**.

**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Attachment** .

- 2 Click on the drawing where you want to add an attachment. The **Attach File** dialog box appears.
- 3 In the **Link Name** field, enter a name for the attachment. Optionally, you can also provide a brief description of the attachment in the **Description** box.
- 4 In the **URL** field, enter the path to the file or click **Browse**. The **File Open** dialog box appears.
- 5 Select the file or click **Browse** and click **OK**.  
**Note:** You can attach any local file or any DMS file.
- 6 From the Open In list, select one the following:
  - **A new applet window:** Opens the attachment in a new AutoVue window.
  - **Current applet window:** Opens the attachment in the current AutoVue window.
  - **Associated application:** Opens the attachment in its associated application.
- 7 Click **OK** to close the Attach File dialog box. The attachment appears on the markup workspace and in the Markup Navigation Tree.
- 8 Right-click in the workspace to complete the attachment.  
**Note:** To open the attachment, double-click on it. It will open in the application selected in step 6.

## Opening an Attachment

To open an attachment, do one of the following:

- Double-click or the attachment icon in the workspace or Markup Navigation Tree.
  - If **A new applet window** was selected while attaching the file, it will open Opens the attachment in a new AutoVue window.
  - If **Current applet window** was selected while attaching the file, it will open in the current AutoVue window.

- If **Associated application** was selected while attaching the file, it will open in its associated application.
- In the tree, right-click the attachment entity in the tree, select **Attachment**, and then select one of the following:
  - **Open**: If **A new applet window** was selected while attaching the file, it will open in a new AutoVue window. If **Current applet window** was selected while attaching the file, it will open in the current AutoVue window. Otherwise, it will in its native application.
  - **Open With**: You have the option to open the attachment with **AutoVue** or **Associated Application**.

## Editing an Attachment

- 9 In the Markup Navigation Tree, right-click the attachment and select **Edit**. The Attach File dialog box appears.
- 10 Make your changes and click to **OK**. The dialog box closes and modifications are implemented.

## Adding a Hyperlink

A hyperlink is a link between the current file and a new file or application. You can create hyperlinks in your current file so that your files and applications outside AutoVue are only a click away. The main benefit of adding hyperlinks to a file is that you can gather all files of related information into one file with the files kept separate. In other words, the files may be accessible from one location but the information is referenced, not duplicated. This ensures a manageable file size when loading. If changes need to be made to a linked file, they need to be done in one location—to the linked file itself.

## Creating a Hyperlink

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Hyperlink**.

**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Hyperlink** .

- 2 Click a point on the document where you want to place the hyperlink. The Establish Hyperlink dialog box appears.
- 3 Enter a **Link Name**.
- 4 Enter a **Description** (optional).
- 5 Type the **URL** or click **Browse** to locate the file that you want to link to.

- 6 From the Open In list, select where you want the hyperlink to open.

---

Open in	Description
A new applet window	Opens the file in another AutoVue window.
Current applet window	Opens the file in the current AutoVue window.
A new browser window	Opens the file in the default browser window.
A current browser window	Opens the file in the current browser window.

---

- 7 Click **OK**.  
The hyperlink appears on the Markup.

## Opening a Hyperlink

To open a hyperlink, double-click on it from the workspace.

The hyperlink file opens in the window you selected in the Establish Hyperlink dialog box.

## Editing a Hyperlink

- 1 In the Markup Navigation Tree or from the workspace, select the hyperlink that you want to edit.
- 2 From the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Edit Hyperlink**. The Edit Hyperlink dialog box appears.  
**Note:** You can right-click a hyperlink in the Markup Navigation Tree and select **Edit**.
- 3 Edit the information that you want.
- 4 Click **OK**.  
The changes are saved.

## Deleting a Hyperlink

- 1 In the Markup Navigation Tree or from the workspace, select the hyperlink that you want to delete.
- 2 From the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Remove Hyperlink**. The Establish Hyperlink dialog box appears.

**Note:** You can also right-click the hyperlink and select **Format**, and then select **Remove Hyperlink**.

The hyperlink is deleted from the file.

## Adding Signoff Entities

The **Signoff** entity is an approval stamp containing information about the markup author, date, and time of creation. You create a signoff entity when the Markup file is finalized.

**Note:** If a markup is modified after a signoff is created, the signoff disappears from the workspace but remains in the Markup Navigation tree. Double-click on the signoff entity in the tree to view the signoff history—the person who rescinded the signoff, the creation date, and the drop date.

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Signoff**.

**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Signoff** .

- 2 Click and drag to create a box on the drawing where you want the signoff. The Signoff dialog box appears displaying details of the signoff.
- 3 Click **OK**.  
The signoff entity appears on the drawing and the tree, and displays the author, creation date, and approval date.

## Rescinding the Signoff

You can rescind a signoff on a drawing.

- 1 In the Markup Navigation tree or in the workspace, double-click the signoff markup entity.

**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Signoff** . The Signoff dialog box appears.

- 2 Click **Rescind**.  
The signoff disappears from the drawing but remains in the Markup Navigation Tree.

To re-approve the signoff:

- 1 In the tree, double-click the signoff markup entity.  
The Signoff dialog box appears
- 2 Click **Approve**.

**Note:** When a the Markup file is modified after adding a signoff, the signoff is automatically rescinded.

## Viewing the History of a Signoff

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Signoff**.

From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Signoff** .

- 2 Click **History**.  
The Signoff History dialog box appears displaying the author, date and time the signoff was created.
- 3 Click **OK**.
- 4 Click **Cancel** to close the Signoff dialog box.

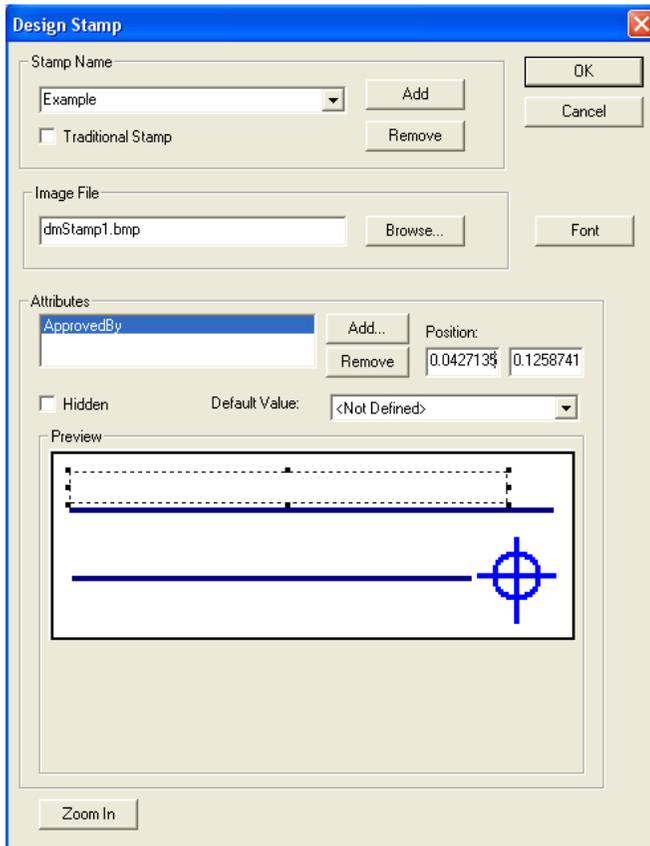
## Creating an Intellistamp

The Intellistamp markup entity lets you create a stamp that includes document and user information (metadata) pulled directly from the backend DMS/ERP/PLM/UCM system.

## Designing an Intellistamp

To design an Intellistamp, you must use the Design Stamp tool that is included with the AutoVue Web Version installation. To launch the tool, go to the *<AutoVue Web Version installation>\bin* folder and double-click *stampdlg.exe*.

The Design Stamp dialog box appears.



The following sections describe how to design an Intellistamp with the Design Stamp tool.

- 1 From the Stamp Name section, click **Add**.  
The Add New Stamp dialog box appears.
- 2 Enter a name for the Intellistamp and then click **OK**.  
The Open dialog box appears.
- 3 Select a background image for the Intellistamp and then click **Open**.  
The selected image appears in the Preview window of the Design Stamp dialog box. The Image File field displays the image file path.  
**Note:** To change the background image once the Intellistamp is created, click **Browse**, and then select a new background.

- 4 To set the selected Intellistamp as read-only, select the **Traditional Stamp** check box.  
**Note:** To remove an Intellistamp, from the Stamp Name box, select an Intellistamp and then click **Remove**.
- 5 To add an attribute, click **Add**.  
The Add New Attribute dialog box appears.
- 6 In the **Name** field, enter an attribute name that is defined in the backend system.
- 7 From the **Default Value** box, select one of the following values:
  - **<Not Defined>**: The attribute retains the same value as defined in the backend system.
  - **\$user**: For *AutoVue Desktop Version*, the operating system user name is assigned to the attribute. For *AutoVue Web Version*, the user session name is assigned to the attribute.
  - **\$date**: The current date and time is assigned to the attribute.
- 8 To prevent users from modifying the attribute, select the **Read Only** check box.
- 9 To hide the attribute from appearing on the Intellistamp, select the **Hidden** check box. However, the attributes are viewable from the DMS Attributes dialog box.  
**See Also** *Viewing/Modifying Intellistamp Attributes*
- 10 When you are done adding an attribute, click **Add**.  
The Add New Attribute dialog box closes and the new attribute is added to Attributes box. The attribute displays as a resizable box in the Preview window.
- 11 To change the value of an existing attribute, from the Attributes list, select the attribute and then select a new value from the **Default Value** box.
- 12 To remove an attribute, from the Attributes list, select the attribute and then click **Remove**.  
**Note:** To add another attribute, repeat steps 5 through 10.
- 13 To change the position of the attribute box in the preview window, you can enter either click and drag the box or enter the (X,Y) coordinates in the **Position** fields.  
**Note:** The Position fields take values between 0 and 1, where (0,0) is the default setting.
- 14 To enlarge the preview, click **Zoom In**.  
The Zoom In dialog box appears. This dialog box provides an enlarged version of the options available in the Design Stamp dialog box.
  - a. To close the Zoom In dialog box, click **Zoom Out**.

- 15 To hide an attribute, select an attribute from the Attributes box, and then select the **Hidden** check box. The hidden attributes will not appear on the Intellistamp, however they are viewable from the DMS Attributes dialog box.

**See Also** *Viewing/Modifying Intellistamp Attributes*

- 16 To changed the font of the attributes, click **Font**. The Font dialog box appears.
  - a. Select the font, font style, and font size.
  - b. From the Script box, you can select Western script or Hebrew script. The font previews in the Sample window.
  - c. Click **OK** to implement the font changes.

Repeat to add multiple Intellistamps.

To view the available Intellistamps, select an Intellistamp from the Stamp Name box; the Intellistamp previews in the Preview window.

## Adding an Intellistamp

To add an Intellistamp markup entity in AutoVue, you must either connect to a backend system or work with a Mobile Pack created with a file from a a backend system which contains an Intellistamp definition.

**See Also** *AutoVue Mobile*

To add an Intellistamp markup entity to a document, do the following:

- 1 Enter Markup mode.
- 2 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Intellistamp**.  
**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Intellistamp** .
- 3 In the workspace, click and drag a box to the desired Intellistamp size. The Intellistamp dialog box appears.
- 4 From the Choose Stamp box, select the desired Intellistamp.  
**Note:** To resize the Intellistamp, select **Enable Resizing**.
- 5 Click **OK**. The Intellistamp dialog box closes and the Intellistamp appears in workspace and in the Markup Entity Tree.
- 6 Right-click the workspace to complete the Intellistamp placement.

## Viewing/Modifying Intellistamp Attributes

You can view the attributes of an Intellistamp by double-clicking the Intellistamp markup entity. The DMS Attributes dialog box appears listing all attributes of the Intellistamp.

**Note:** All attributes tagged hidden will also display in the Attributes dialog box. The dialog box contains three columns that include attribute values defined in the design stage:

- The *Name* column displays the attribute name as defined in the design stage. It will either display the backend DMS/ERP/PLM/UCM system-defined attribute name or the user-defined name.
- The *Value* column displays the assigned value. If the attribute is not marked as *read-only* in the design stage, you can modify the value.
- The *Value from DMS* column displays the value assigned from the backend system.

### Intellistamp in a DMS/ERP/PLM/UCM System Integration

If you view the Intellistamp markup entity in AutoVue with a backend system integration, the **Commit Changes** and **Reset** buttons appear in the DMS Attributes dialog box:

- Click the **Commit Changes** button to upload the changes made to the DMS Attributes dialog box to the backend system.
- Click the **Reset** button to retrieve the attribute values defined in the backend system.

When you are done modifying the attribute, click **OK** to finalize your changes and to close the DMS Attributes dialog box.

### Intellistamp in a Mobile Pack

If you view the Intellistamp markup entity from a Mobile Pack, the **Commit Changes** and **Reset** buttons appear in the DMS Attributes dialog box:

- Click the **Commit Changes** button to upload the changes made to the DMS Attributes dialog box to the Mobile Pack.
- Click the **Reset** button to reset the Intellistamp attribute values to those defined in the Mobile Pack.

When you are done modifying the attribute, click **OK** to finalize your changes and to close the DMS Attributes dialog box.

## Adding a Stamp

A **Stamp** is a graphical entity, such as a company logo. Before a graphic entity can be used as a stamp, it must be added to a Stamp Library.

You can create a Stamp Library and add stamps to it. You can also add or remove stamps from existing libraries.

- 7 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Stamp**.  
The Stamps dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Stamp** .

- 8 Click the **Stamps** tab.
- 9 From the Stamp Library list, select the library from which you want to select a stamp.  
The stamps appear for the selected library.

**See *Adding a Stamp to a Library***

- 10 Click **Isotropic** if you want to scale the stamp proportionately.  
Click **Anisotropic** if you want to scale the stamp disproportionately.
- 11 Drag the stamp onto the workspace.  
The stamp appears on the drawing and in the Markup Navigation Tree.  
**Note:** To add more stamps, repeat steps 3 to 5.
- 12 Close the Stamps dialog box.

## Creating a New Stamp Library

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Stamp**.  
The Stamps dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Stamp** .

- 2 Click the **Libraries** tab.
- 3 Click **Create**.  
The Stamp Library dialog box appears.
- 4 Enter the library name, description, author, and keywords in their respective fields.
- 5 To add a stamp to the library, click **Add**.  
The Open dialog box appears.
- 6 Browse to locate the stamp you want to add, and then click **Open**.  
The file appears in the Stamp Files list.

**Note:** To add more stamps, repeat steps 4 to 6. To remove a stamp, select the stamp and click **Remove**.

## Deleting a Stamp from a Library

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Stamp**.  
The Stamps dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Stamp** .

- 2 Click the **Stamps** tab.
- 3 From the Stamp Library list, select the library which contains the stamp you want to delete.
- 4 The stamps appear in the Drag and Drop a Stamp onto AutoVue section.
- 5 Select the stamp you want to delete, then click **Delete**.  
The stamp disappears from the library.
- 6 Close the Stamps dialog box.

## Editing Stamp Library Information

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Stamp**.  
The Stamps dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Stamp** .

- 2 Click the **Libraries** tab.
- 3 From the Stamp Libraries list, select the library that you want edit.
- 4 Click **Edit**.  
The Stamp Library dialog box appears.
- 5 Edit the information.
- 6 Click **OK**.
- 7 Close the Stamps dialog box.

## Deleting a Stamp Library

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Stamp**.  
The Stamps dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Stamp** .

- 2 Click the **Libraries** tab.
- 3 From the Stamp Libraries list, select the library that you want to delete.
- 4 Click **Delete**.  
The library disappears from the list and from the Stamp Library list under the **Stamps** tab.
- 5 Close the Stamps dialog box.

## Adding a Stamp to a Library

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Stamp**.  
The Stamps dialog box appears.  
  
**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Stamp** .
- 2 Click the **Stamps** tab.
- 3 From the Stamp Library list, select the library that you want to add a stamp.
- 4 Click **Add Stamp**.  
The Stamp Definition dialog box appears.  
Enter the source file, stamp Name, and description in their respective fields, or click **Browse** to locate the source file.
- 5 Click **OK**.  
The stamp appears under the Drag and Drop a Stamp onto AutoVue section in the Stamps dialog box.  
**Note:** To add more than one stamp, repeat steps 4 and 5.
- 6 Close the Stamps dialog box.

## 2D-Specific Markups

AutoVue provides a variety of user-friendly markup options that you can use when marking up 2D files. You can create entities such as arcs, boxes, circles, clouds, lines, and polygons. You can draw a leader with multi-line segments and add text to it.

**Note:** When you are creating a markup entity, you can press the **Escape** key to cancel.

*See Also **Marking up 2D and 3D Files***

## 2D Markup Entities

You can create many different types of markup entities. To access the markup entities, from the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**.

The markup entities are:

Option	Description
<b>Note:</b>	To complete a markup entity (for example, to finish creating a box), simply right-click in the AutoVue workspace.

Option	Description
Arc	<p>Click and drag the mouse to draw an Arc.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Arc</b> .</p>
Attachment	<p>Add an attachment entity to the markup.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Arc</b> .</p> <p><b>See <i>Adding an Attachment</i></b></p>
Box	<p>Click and drag to draw a rectangle.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Box</b> .</p> <p><b>Note:</b> To draw a square instead of a rectangle, press and hold the <b>Shift</b> key while you click and drag.</p>
Cloud	<p>Click and drag to draw a Cloud.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Cloud</b> .</p>
Circle	<p>Click and drag to draw an ellipse.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Circle</b> .</p> <p><b>Note:</b> To draw a circle instead of an ellipse, press and hold the <b>Shift</b> key while you click and drag.</p>
Freestyle	<p>Click, release mouse button, then drag to draw an entity.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Freestyle</b> .</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You can create a contiguous or non-contiguous freestyle entity.</p> <p><b>See <i>Adding a Freestyle Entity</i></b></p>
Highlight	<p>Click and drag to highlight a boxed area.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Highlight</b> .</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The highlighted box will be filled with a transparent color.</p>
Hyperlink	<p>Click the workspace to attach a hyperlink.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Hyperlink</b> .</p> <p><b>See <i>Adding a Hyperlink</i></b></p>

Option	Description
Intellistamp	<p>Add a stamp on a document in a connected and disconnected environment. Includes specific document and user information (metadata) pulled directly from the DMS/ERP/PLM/UCM system.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Intellistamp</b> .</p> <p>Refer to the <i>AutoVue Mobile User Manual</i>.</p>
Leader	<p>Click and drag to draw a leader.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Leader</b> .</p> <p><b>Note:</b> To force a line segment in a Leader entity to be aligned to the closer axis, horizontal or vertical axis, hold the <b>Shift</b> key while you click and drag for that line segment.</p> <p><b>See <i>Adding a Leader</i></b></p>
Line	<p>Click and drag to draw a line.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Line</b> .</p> <p><b>Note:</b> To draw a line and force it to be aligned to the closer axis, horizontal or vertical, press and hold the <b>Shift</b> key while you click and drag.</p> <p><b>See <i>Aligning a Line Segment to the Vertical or Horizontal Axes</i></b></p>
Measurement	<p>Create markup measure entities.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Distance</b> ,</p> <p><b>Area</b> , <b>Angle</b> , <b>Arc</b> , or <b>Minimum Distance</b> .</p> <p><b>See <i>Creating 2D non-Vector Markup Measure Entities</i></b>  <b><i>Creating 2D Vector Markup Measure Entities</i></b>  <b><i>Creating EDA Markup Measure Entities</i></b></p>
Note	<p>Add a note to the markup.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Note</b> .</p> <p><b>See <i>Adding a Note</i></b></p>
Polygon	<p>Click and drag to draw a polygon.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Polygon</b> .</p>

Option	Description
Polyline	<p>Click and drag to draw a polyline.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Polyline</b> .</p> <p><b>Note:</b> To force a line segment in a Polyline entity to be aligned to the closer axis, horizontal or vertical, press and hold the <b>Shift</b> key while you click and drag for that line segment.</p> <p><b>See <i>Aligning a Line Segment to the Vertical or Horizontal Axes</i></b></p>
Signoff	<p>Create an approval stamp containing information about the markup author, date and time of creation.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Signoff</b> .</p> <p><b>See <i>Adding Signoff Entities</i></b></p>
Stamp	<p>Click and drag a stamp to the markup.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Stamp</b> .</p> <p><b>See <i>Adding a Stamp</i></b></p>
Text	<p>Add text to the markup.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Text</b> .</p> <p><b>See <i>Adding Text</i></b></p>

## Adding a Freestyle Entity

You can create a freestyle markup entity. You have the option of making the entity non-contiguous or contiguous.

### Creating a Non-Contiguous Freestyle Entity

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Freestyle**.

**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Freestyle** .

- 2 Click a point on the drawing where you want to start the Freestyle entity.
- 3 Move the cursor to create the Freestyle entity.
- 4 Click a point on the drawing where you want to interrupt the Freestyle entity.
- 5 Click another point on the drawing where you want to restart the Freestyle entity.

**Note:** You can interrupt the Freestyle entity as many times as you like by repeating steps 4 and 5.

- 6 Right-click to end the Freestyle entity.

## Creating a Contiguous Freestyle Entity

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Freestyle**.

**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Freestyle** .

- 2 Click a point on the drawing where you want to start the Freestyle entity.
- 3 Move the cursor to create the Freestyle entity.
- 4 Right-click to end the Freestyle entity.

## Adding a Leader

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Leader**.

**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Leader** .

- 2 Click a point on the document where define the Leader anchor point.
- 3 Move the cursor to draw the Leader.

**Note:** To draw a Leader segment and force it to be aligned to the closest axis, vertical or horizontal, hold the **Shift** key while moving the cursor.

**See *Aligning a Line Segment to the Vertical or Horizontal Axes***

- 4 To draw a Leader with multiple line segments, repeat steps 2 and 3 as often as you like. You can click, then drag as often as you like.
- 5 Right-click to end the Leader.  
A text box appears at the end of the Leader.

- 6 In the text box, enter the text you want to attach to the Leader.

**Note:** The height of the text box will resize to fit the entered text.

- 7 To change text box font properties, from the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Font**.

The Font dialog box appears allowing you to change the font type, style, and size.

**Note:** From the respective font property lists on the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also modify the font type, style, and size

- 8 Click **OK** to implement the font changes and to close the Font dialog box.
- 9 To change the line properties or fill color of the Leader, select the Leader, then from the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select the property or properties you want to change.

**Note:** From the respective line property lists on the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also modify the line style, line thickness, fill types, and fill colors.

10 Right-click outside the text area to complete the modification.

The text appears on the drawing and in the Markup Navigation Tree.

**Note:** To edit the Leader text, double-click the Leader in the tree or in the workspace.

## Aligning a Line Segment to the Vertical or Horizontal Axes

You can draw a line segment and force it to be aligned with the closer axis—horizontal or vertical. You can also take an existing line segment and have it align with the closer axis. The types of line segments that you can align are lines, line segments of leaders and polylines, and measure entities.

**Note:** This procedure only works for measure entities that are drawn using Free Snap.

### **See 2D Vector Snapping Modes**

- 1 To draw and force a line segment, press and hold the **Shift** key while you click and drag for that line segment.  
To force an existing line segment, click and hold the left mouse button on the line segment, then press and hold the **Shift** key.
- 2 When you see that the line segment is horizontal or vertical, release the left mouse button, then release the **Shift** key.

## Creating 2D non-Vector Markup Measure Entities

When marking up 2D non-vector files, in addition to all the markup options available for 2D files, you can create markup measure entities. The measure options in Markup mode work a bit differently than in View mode.

### **See 2D-Specific Markups**

When measuring in Markup mode, the specified measurement lines and values are displayed on the current active markup layer as entities. These entities can be moved, resized, or deleted. You can also modify the font of a measure entity, align a “free snap” measure entity to the horizontal or vertical axis, as well as add units of measure and symbols to a measurement and have them appear on the drawing.

**Note:** When you are creating a markup entity, you can press the **Escape** key to cancel.

Measure options vary between vector and non-vector files. For vector files, AutoVue provides the option to “snap” to fixed points on the drawing. For non-vector files, you can only “free snap”.

In Markup mode, you can choose from several measure options to create markup measure entities. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Measurement** to access the following measure options:

Option	Description
Angle	Measure the angle between selected points. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Angle</b>  .
Arc	Measure an arc entity. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Arc</b>  .
Area	Measure a selected area. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Area</b>  .
Distance	Measure the distance between two points. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Distance</b>  .

## Measuring Distance

Use the **Distance** option to measure the distance between two specific points.

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add entity**, select **Measurement**, and then select **Distance**.  
The Measurement Entities dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Distance** .

- 2 From the Measured Distance Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the distance.
- 3 Click a point on the drawing to define the starting point.
- 4 Click another point on the drawing to define the end point.  
The measured line path appears as an entity on the current active markup.

- 5 Move the cursor and click a location on the drawing to display the measure distance.  
The measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The measured distance, Delta-X, and Delta-Y appear in the Measurement Entities dialog box.
- 6 To resize the value box, select it and then click and drag the frame handles.
- 7 You can click and drag the text box anywhere on the drawing.  
**Note:** To make another measurement, click **Reset**.
- 8 Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog box.

## Measuring Cumulative Distance

Use the **Cumulative Distance** option to measure the distance along a path of multi-faceted (adjoining) points.

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add entity**, select **Measurement**, and then select **Distance**.  
The Measurement Entities dialog box appears.  
**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Distance**  .
- 2 From the Measured Distance Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the distance.
- 3 Select **Cumulative**.
- 4 Click a point on the drawing to define the starting point.
- 5 Continue clicking points along the path that you want to measure.  
Each point is joined by a line.
- 6 Right-click to complete the measurement.  
The measured line path, cumulated measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The cumulated measured distance, Delta-X, and Delta-Y appear in the Measurement Entities dialog box.  
**Note:** To make another measurement, click **Reset**.
- 7 Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog box.

## Calibrating Distance

- 1 Measure the distance between two points or measure cumulative distance.  
**See *Measuring Distance***
- 2 In the Measurement Entities dialog box, click **Calibrate**.  
The Distance Calibration dialog box appears displaying the measured distance.

- 3 From the Distance list, select the unit to which you want to calibrate the distance.
- 4 Select **Calibrate to** and enter a value if you want to calibrate the distance to a value.  
Select **Set Factor** and enter a value if you want to calibrate the distance by a factor.
- 5 Click **OK**.  
The calibration result appears in the Measurement Entities dialog box.
- 6 Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog box.

## Measuring Area

Use the **Area** option to measure the area and perimeter of a region.

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add entity**, select **Measurement**, and then select **Area**.  
The Measurement Entities dialog box appears.  
**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Area**  .
- 2 From the Measured Area Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the area.  
From the Perimeter Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the perimeter.
- 3 To cumulate a Net Area Result of different areas, select **Add**.  
To subtract an area from the Net Area Result, select **Subtract**.  
Select **Clear** to clear the Net Area Result field.
- 4 Click a point on the drawing to define the starting point.
- 5 Continue clicking points on the drawing to define the area you want to measure.  
Each point is joined by a line.
- 6 Right click to complete the measurement.  
The measured line path, measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The area and perimeter measurements appear in the Measurement Entities dialog box.  
**Note:** To make another measurement, click **Reset**.
- 7 Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog box.

## Measuring an Angle

Use the **Angle** option to measure the angle between points on a drawing.

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add entity**, select **Measurement**, and then select **Angle**.  
The Measurement Entities dialog box appears.  
**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Angle** .
- 2 From the Measured Angle Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the angle.
- 3 Click points on the drawing to define the angle you want to measure:
  - The first click defines the starting point of the angle measurement.
  - The second click defines the vertex of the angle measurement.
  - The third click defines the endpoint of the angle measurement.
 The points are joined by angle arms with an arc connecting them.
- 4 Move the cursor to increase or decrease the radial and arc length.
- 5 Click again to complete the measurement.  
The measured line path, angle measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The measured angle also appears in the Measurement Entities dialog box.
- 6 To resize the value box, select it and then click and drag the frame handles.
- 7 You can click and drag the value box anywhere on the drawing.  
**Note:** To make another measurement, click **Reset**.
- 8 Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog box.

## Measuring an Arc

Use the **Arc** option to define an arc in the drawing and measure its radius, center and diameter.

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add entity**, select **Measurement**, and then select **Arc**.  
The Measurement Entities dialog box appears.  
**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Arc** .
- 2 From the Arc Info Length list, select the unit in which you want to measure the arc.
- 3 From the Measured Angle Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the angle. The options are degrees or radians.
- 4 Select **Add Radius** if you want to measure the radius of the arc.  
Select **Add Diameter** if you want to measure the diameter of the arc.
- 5 Click three points on the drawing to define the arc you want to measure.  
The points are joined by an arc.
- 6 Click again to complete the measurement.

The measured line path, arc measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer and in the Measurement Entities dialog box.

- 7 To resize the value box, select it and then click and drag the frame handles.
- 8 You can click and drag the text box anywhere on the drawing.  
**Note:** To make another measurement, click **Reset**.
- 9 Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog box.

## Calibrating an Arc

- 1 Measure an arc in the drawing.  
**See *Measuring an Arc***
- 2 In the Measurement Entities dialog box, click **Calibrate**.  
The Radius Calibration dialog box appears displaying the measured distance.
- 3 From the Measured Rad list, select the unit to which you want to calibrate the distance.
- 4 Select **Calibrate to** and enter a value if you want to calibrate to a value. Select **Set Factor** and enter a value if you want to calibrate by a factor.
- 5 Click **OK**.  
The calibration result appears in the Measurement Entities dialog box.
- 6 Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog box.

## Creating 2D Vector Markup Measure Entities

When marking up 2D vector files, in addition to all the markup options available for 2D files, you can create markup measure entities. The measure options in Markup mode work slightly different than in View mode.

### **See *2D-Specific Markups***

Measure options vary between vector and non-vector files. For vector files, AutoVue provides the option to “snap” to fixed points on the drawing. For non-vector files, you can only “free snap”.

When measuring in Markup mode, the specified measurement lines and values are displayed on the current active markup layer as entities. These entities can be moved, resized, hidden or deleted. You can also modify the font of a measure entity, align a “free snap” measure entity to the horizontal or vertical axis, as well as add units of measure and symbols to a measurement and have them appear on the drawing.

**Note:** When you are creating a markup entity, you can press the **Escape** key to cancel.

In Markup mode, you can choose from several measure options to create markup measure entities. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Measurement** to access the following measure options:

Option	Description
Angle	Measure the angle between selected points. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Angle</b>  .
Arc	Measure an arc entity. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Arc</b>  .
Area	Measure a selected area. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Area</b>  .
Distance	Measure the distance between two points. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Distance</b>  .

## 2D Vector Snapping Modes

The **snapping modes** available allow you to click to precise geometrical points on a drawing. For example, if you select **Snap to End-Point** and you move the cursor over an end-point of a line, the end-point will be highlighted by a snap box.

The snapping modes allow you to snap to the mid, center, and end-points of an entity:

Button	Snap to	Description
	End-point	Geometric snap mode where a snap box appears when moving the cursor near a linear component's end point.

Button	Snap to	Description
	Mid-point	Geometric snap mode where a snap box appears when moving the cursor near the halfway point of a linear component.
	Center-point	Geometric snap mode where a snap box appears when moving the cursor near the center of an elliptical component.
	Free snap	Allow snapping at any point on the drawing.

The below table lists snapping locations for certain measurements:

Measurement	Snapping Location
Area	Snaps to a shape on the drawing.
Arc	Snaps to an arc on the drawing.
Angle	Snaps to an angle on the drawing.

## Measuring Distance

Use the **Distance** option to measure the distance between two specific points.

- From the **Markup** menu, select **Add entity**, select **Measurement**, and then select **Distance**.

The Measurement Entities dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Distance** .

- Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.  
To select all snapping modes, click **All On**. To deselect all snapping modes, click **All Off**.

**See 2D Vector Snapping Modes**

- From the Measure Distance Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the distance.
- Click a point on the drawing to define the starting point.
- Click another point on the drawing to define the end point.  
The measured line path appears as an entity on the current active markup.
- Drag to move the measured line path.

- Click on the measured line path.  
The measurement and unit appear as in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The measured distance, Delta-X and Delta-Y appear in the Measurement Entities dialog box.
- To resize the value box, select it and then click and drag the frame handles.  
**Note:** To make another measurement, click **Reset**.
- Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog box.

## Measuring Cumulative Distance

Use the **Cumulative Distance** option to measure the distance along a path of multi-faceted (adjoining) points.

- From the **Markup** menu, select **Add entity**, select **Measurement**, and then select **Distance**.  
The Measurement Entities dialog box appears.  
**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Distance** .
- Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.  
To select all snapping modes, click **All On**. To deselect all snapping modes, click **All Off**.  
**See 2D Vector Snapping Modes**
- From the Measured Distance Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the distance.
- Select **Cumulative**.
- Click a point on the drawing to define the starting point.
- Continue clicking points along the path that you want to measure.  
Each point is joined by a line.
- Right-click to complete the measurement.  
The measured line path, measurement and unit appear as in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The cumulated measured distance, Delta-X and Delta-Y appear in the Measurement Entities dialog box.
- To resize the value box, select it and then click and drag the frame handles.  
**Note:** To make another measurement, click **Reset**.
- Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog box.

## Calibrating Distance

- Measure the distance between two points or measure cumulative distance.  
**See Measuring Distance**
- In the Measurement Entities dialog box, click **Calibrate**.

The Distance Calibration dialog box appears displaying the measured distance.

- 3 In the Measured Distance list, select the unit to which you want to calibrate the distance.
- 4 Select **Calibrate to** and enter a value if you want to calibrate the distance to a value.  
Select **Set Factor** and enter a value if you want to calibrate the distance by a factor.
- 5 Click **OK**.  
The calibration result appears in the Measurement Entities dialog box.
- 6 Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog box.

## Measuring Area

Use the **Area** option to measure the area and perimeter of a region.

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add entity**, select **Measurement**, and then select **Area**.

The Measurement Entities dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Area** .

- 2 Select **Between Points** if you want to measure the area between points on a drawing. The snapping modes are displayed.  
Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.  
To select all snapping modes, click **All On**. To deselect all snapping modes, click **All Off**.

**See 2D Vector Snapping Modes**

- 3 Select **Shape** if you want to measure the area of a predefined shape on the drawing.
- 4 From the Measured Area Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the area.
- 5 From the Perimeter Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the perimeter.
- 6 To cumulate a Net Area Result of different areas, select **Add** in the Measurement Entities dialog box.  
To subtract an area from the Net Area Result, select **Subtract**.  
Select **Clear** to clear the Net Area Result field.
- 7 If you selected **Between Points**, click points on the drawing to define the area, then right click to complete the measurement.

Each point is joined by a line. The measured line path, measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The area and perimeter measurements appear in the Measurement Entities dialog box.

- 8 If you selected **Shape**, click the edge of a predefined shape on the drawing. The shape is highlighted. The measured line path, measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The area and perimeter measurements appear in the Measurement Entities dialog box.
- 9 Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog box.

## Measuring an Angle

Use the **Angle** option to measure the angle between points on a drawing.

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add entity**, select **Measurement**, and then select **Angle**.

The Measurement Entities dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Angle**  .

- 2 Select **From 3 Points** if you want to measure the angle between three points. The snapping modes are displayed.
- 3 Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring. To select all snapping modes, click **All On**. To deselect all snapping modes click **All Off**.

**See 2D Vector Snapping Modes**

- 4 Select **Between 2 lines** if you want to measure the angle between two lines.
- 5 From the Measured Angle Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the angle.
- 6 If you selected **From 3 Points**, click three points on the drawing to define the angle.  
If you selected **Between 2 Lines**, click two lines on the drawing to define the angle.  
Angle arms appear with an arc connecting them.
- 7 Click to complete the measurement.  
The measured line path, measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The measured angle also appears in the Measurement Entities dialog box.
- 8 To change the size of the arc, click and drag the value box.
- 9 To resize the value box, select it and then click and drag the frame handles.  
**Note:** To make another measurement, click **Reset**.
- 10 Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog box.

## Measuring an Arc

Use the **Arc** option to define an arc in the drawing and measure its radius, center and diameter.

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add entity**, select **Measurement**, and then select **Arc**.  
The Measurement Entities dialog box appears.
- 2 From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Arc** .
- 3 Select **From 3 Points** if you want to measure the arc between three points.  
The snapping modes are displayed.  
Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.  
To select all snapping modes, click **All On**. To deselect all snapping modes click **All Off**.  
**See 2D Vector Snapping Modes**
- 4 Select **Arc Entity** if you want to measure a predefined arc.
- 5 From the Arc Info list, select the unit in which you want to measure the distance.
- 6 From the Measure Angle Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the angle.
- 7 Select **Add Radius** if you want to measure the radius.  
Select **Add Diameter** if you want to measure the diameter
- 8 If you selected **From 3 Points**, click three points to define the arc, then click to complete the measurement  
The points are joined by an arc.  
If you selected **Arc Entity**, click the edge of the arc that you want to measure. The arc is highlighted.
- 9 Click to complete the measurement.  
The measured line path, measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The measurements for center point coordinates, radius, diameter, arc length, start and end of angle and sweep appear in the Measurement Entities dialog box.
- 10 To move the value box, click and drag it to anywhere on the drawing.
- 11 To resize the value box, select it and then click and drag the frame handles.  
**Note:** Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
- 12 Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog box.

## Calibrating an Arc

- 1 Measure an arc in the drawing.

### See *Measuring an Arc*

- 2 In the Measurement Entities dialog box, click **Calibrate**.  
The Radius Calibration dialog box appears displaying the measured distance.
- 3 From the Measured Rad. list, select the unit to which you want to calibrate the distance.
- 4 Select **Calibrate to** and enter a value if you want to calibrate to a value. Select **Set Factor** and enter a value if you want to calibrate by a factor.
- 5 Click **OK**.  
The calibration result appears in the Measurement Entities dialog box.
- 6 Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog box.

## Creating EDA Markup Measure Entities

When marking up EDA files, in addition to all the markup options available for 2D files, you can create markup measure entities. The measure options in Markup mode work slightly different than in View mode.

### See *2D-Specific Markups*

**Note:** When you are creating a markup entity, you can press the **Escape** key to cancel.

When measuring in Markup mode, the specified measurement lines and values are displayed on the current active markup layer as entities. These entities can be moved, resized, or deleted. You can also modify the font of a measure entity, align a “free snap” measure entity to the horizontal or vertical axis, as well as add units of measure and symbols to a measurement and have them appear on the drawing.

AutoVue provides the option to “snap” to geometrical or electrical points on the drawing.

In Markup mode, you can choose from several measure options to create markup measure entities. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Measurement** to access the following measure options:

Option	Description
Angle	Measure the angle between selected points. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Angle</b>
	

Option	Description
Arc	Measure an arc entity. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Arc</b> 
Area	Measure a selected area. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Area</b> 
Distance	Measure the distance between two points. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Distance</b> 
Minimum Distance	Measure the minimum distance between entities. From the Markup Entity toolbar, click <b>Minimum Distance</b> 

## EDA Snapping Modes

The **snapping modes** allow you to click to precise geometrical or electrical points. For example, when you select **Snap to Pin**, move the cursor over the pin you want to select until the pin is highlighted, then click. Highlight and click a second pin to measure the distance between them.

The snapping modes allow you to snap to the mid, center, and end-points of an entity, as well as a pin, via, and symbol. The following table outlines the available snapping modes:

Button	Snap to	Description
	End-point	Geometric snap mode where a snap box appears when moving the cursor near the component's end point.
	Mid-point	Geometric snap mode where a snap box appears when moving the cursor near the halfway point of a linear component.

Button	Snap to	Description
	Center-point	Geometric snap mode where a snap box appears when moving the cursor near the center of an elliptical component.
	Pin	Electrical snap mode where a snap box appears when the cursor touches a pin.
	Via origin	Electrical snap mode where a snap box appears when the cursor touches a via.
	Symbol origin	Electrical snap mode where a snap box appears when the cursor touches the entire component.
	Free snap	Allows snapping at any point on the drawing.

## Measuring Distance

Use the **Distance** option to measure the distance between two specific points.

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add entity**, select **Measurement**, and then select **Distance**.

The Measurement Entities dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Distance** .

- 2 Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.  
To select all snapping modes, click **All On**. To deselect all snapping modes, click **All Off**.

**See *EDA Snapping Modes***

- 3 From the Measured Distance Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the distance.
- 4 Click a point on the drawing to define the starting point.
- 5 Click another point on the drawing to define the end point.  
The points are joined by a line. The measured line path appears as an entity on the current active markup.
- 6 Drag to move the measured line path.
- 7 Click on the measured line path.  
The measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The measured distance, Delta-X, Delta-Y and the “Manhattan Distance” appear in the Measurement Entities dialog box.
- 8 To resize the value box, select it and then click and drag the frame handles.

**Note:** Click **Reset** to take another measurement.

- 9 Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog box

## Measuring Cumulative Distance

Use the **Cumulative Distance** option to measure the distance along a path of multi-faceted (adjoining) points.

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add entity**, select **Measurement**, and then select **Distance**.

The Measurement Entities dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Distance**  .

- 2 Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.  
To select all snapping modes, click **All On**. To deselect all snapping modes, click **All Off**.

**See *EDA Snapping Modes***

- 3 From the Measured Distance Units list, select the unit that you want to measure the distance.
- 4 Select **Cumulative**.
- 5 Click the first entity to define the starting point.
- 6 Continue clicking points along the path that you want to measure.  
Each point is joined by a line.
- 7 Right-click to complete the measurement.  
The measured line path, measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The measured distance, Delta-X, Delta-Y and the “Manhattan Distance” appear in the Measurement Entities dialog box.

**Note:** Click **Reset** to take another measurement.

- 8 Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog box.

## Calibrating Distance

- 1 Measure the distance between two points or measure cumulative distance.  
**See *Measuring Distance***
- 2 In the Measurement Entities dialog box, click **Calibrate**.
- 3 The Distance Calibration dialog box appears displaying the measured distance.
- 4 In the Measured Distance list, select the unit to which you want to calibrate the distance.

- 5 Select **Calibrate to** and enter a value if you want to calibrate the distance to a value.  
Select **Set Factor** and enter a value if you want to calibrate the distance by a factor.
- 6 Click **OK**.  
The calibration result appears in the Measurement Entities dialog box.
- 7 Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog box.

## Measuring Area

Use the **Area** option to measure the area and perimeter of a region.

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add entity**, select **Measurement**, and then select **Area**.  
The Measurement Entities dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Area**  .

- 2 Select **Between Points** if you want to measure the area between points on a drawing. Snapping modes are displayed.  
Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.  
To select all snapping modes, click **All On**. To deselect all snapping modes, click **All Off**.

**See** *EDA Snapping Modes*

- 3 Select **Shape** if you want to measure the area of a predefined shape on the drawing.
- 4 From the Measured Area Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the area.
- 5 From the Perimeter Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the perimeter.
- 6 To cumulate a Net Area Result of different areas, select **Add** in the Measurement Entities dialog box.  
To subtract an area from the Net Area Result, select **Subtract**.  
Select **Clear** to clear the Net Area Result field.
- 7 If you selected **Between Points**, click points on the drawing to define the area.  
Each point is joined by a line and the measurement appears in the Measurement Entities dialog box.
- 8 If you selected **Shape**, click the edge of a predefined shape on the drawing.  
The shape is highlighted.
- 9 Right-click to complete the measurement.

The measured line path, measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The area and perimeter measurements appear in the Measurement Entities dialog box.

**Note:** Click **Reset** to take another measurement.

- 10 Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog box.

## Measuring an Angle

Use the **Angle** option to measure the angle between points on a drawing.

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add entity**, select **Measurement**, and then select **Angle**.

The Measurement Entities dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Angle** .

- 2 Select **From 3 Points** if you want to measure the angle between three points. Snapping modes are displayed.

Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.

To select all snapping modes, click **All On**. To deselect all snapping modes, click **All Off**.

**See *EDA Snapping Modes***

- 3 Select **Between 2 lines** if you want to measure the angle between two lines.
- 4 From the Measured Angle Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the angle.
- 5 If you selected **From 3 Points**, click three points to define the angle. If you selected **Between 2 Lines**, click two lines to define the angle. Angle arms appear with an arc connecting them.
- 6 Right-click to complete the measurement.

The measured line path, measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The measured angle appears in the Measurement Entities dialog box.

- 7 To change the size of the arc, click and drag the it to the desired size.
- 8 To move the value box, click and drag it to anywhere on the drawing.
- 9 To resize the value box, select it and then click and drag the frame handles.

**Note:** Click **Reset** to take another measurement.

- 10 Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog box.

## Measuring an Arc

Use the **Arc** option to define an arc in the drawing and measure its radius, center and diameter.

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add entity**, select **Measurement**, and then select **Arc**.  
The Measurement Entities dialog box appears.  
**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Arc**  .
- 2 Select **From 3 Points** if you want to measure the arc between three points. Snapping modes are displayed.  
Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.  
To select all snapping modes, click **All On**. To deselect all snapping modes, click **All Off**.  
**See *EDA Snapping Modes***
- 3 Select **Arc Entity** if you want to measure a predefined arc.
- 4 From the Arc Info list, select the unit in which you want to measure the distance of the arc.
- 5 From the Measured Angle Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the angle.
- 6 Select **Add Radius** if you want measure the radius.  
Select **Add Diameter** if you want to measure the diameter.
- 7 If you selected **From 3 Points**, click three points to define the arc.  
The points are joined by an arc.  
If you selected an **Arc Entity**, click an edge of the arc.  
The arc is highlighted.
- 8 Click to complete the measurement.  
The measured line path, measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The measurements for center point coordinates, radius, diameter, arc length, start and end of angle and sweep appear in the Measurement Entities dialog box.
- 9 To move the value box, click and drag it to anywhere on the drawing.
- 10 To resize the value box, select it and then click and drag the frame handles.  
**Note:** Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
- 11 Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog box.

## Calibrating an Arc

- 1 Measure an arc in the drawing.  
**See *Measuring an Arc***
- 2 In the Measurement Entities dialog box, click **Calibrate**.  
The Distance Calibration dialog box appears displaying the measured distance.

- 3 From the Measured Rad. list, select the unit to which you want to calibrate the distance.
- 4 Select **Calibrate to** and enter a value if you want to calibrate to a value. Select **Set Factor** and enter a value if you want to calibrate by a factor.
- 5 Click **OK**.  
The calibration result appears in the Measurement Entities dialog box.
- 6 Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog box.

## Measuring Minimum Distance

Use the **Minimum Distance** option to measure the minimum distance between entities. The available entities for snapping are nets, pins, vias and traces.

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add entity**, select **Measurement**, and then select **Minimum Distance**.

The Measurement Entities dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Minimum Distance** .

- 2 Click  **First Set** to select the entities that you want to measure from.
- 3 Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.

**See EDA Snapping Modes**

**Note:** If you select **Net**, you cannot select any other type of entity.

- 4 Click the first set of entities on the drawing.  
The entities are highlighted.

**Note:** To clear the last set of entities you selected, click **Clear Set**.

- 5 Click  **Second Set** to select the entities that you want to measure to.
- 6 Click the second set of entities on the drawing.  
The entities are highlighted in a different color.
- 7 From the Measured Min. Distance list, select the unit in which you want to measure the distance.
- 8 Select **Zoom to Result**, if you want to zoom in on the measured value on the drawing.
- 9 Click **Compute**.  
The minimum distance from the first set of entities to the second set is highlighted by a line. The measured line path, measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The measurement, Delta-X, Delta-Y, and the Manhattan Distance appear in the Measurement Entities dialog box.
- 10 To move the value box, click and drag it to anywhere on the drawing.

- 11 To resize the value box, select it and then click and drag the frame handles.  
**Note:** Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
- 12 Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog box.

## Adding Text

With AutoVue, you can add a text box entity to a markup.

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Text**.

**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Text** .

- 2 Click and drag on the drawing to define the dimensions of the text box.
- 3 Click in the text box and enter the text you want to add.

**Note:** The height of the text box will adjust to accommodate the text.

- 4 To change text box font properties, from the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Font**.

The Font dialog box appears allowing you to change the font type, style, and size.

**Note:** From the respective font property lists on the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also modify the font type, style, and size.

- 5 Click **OK** to implement the font changes and to close the Font dialog box.
- 6 To change the line properties or fill color of the text box, select the text box, then from the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select the property or properties you want to change.

**Note:** From the respective line property lists on the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also modify the line style, line thickness, fill types, and fill colors.

- 7 Right-click outside the text area to complete the modification.  
The text appears on the drawing and in the Markup Navigation Tree.
- 8 To move the text box click and drag it.
- 9 Click and drag the frame handles of the text box to enlarge it.

**Note:** To edit the text, double-click the text box in the tree or in the workspace.

To hide the box surrounding the text:

- 1 Select the text box entity.
- 2 From the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Markup Entity Attributes**.

The Markup Entity Properties dialog box appears.

- 3 From the Text Box Visibility list, select **OFF**.
- 4 Click **OK**.

The dialog box closes and the text box is hidden.  
To undo, repeat steps 1 through 4, except select **ON**.

## Adding a Note

You can attach longer comments as a markup sticky note on the drawing. A note displays in the workspace as a standard size graphical symbol . Each note is labelled as *Note*<*n*>—where *n* represents the numerical order of occurrence of the note (for example, the first note is labelled as *Note1*). To read the note, double-click the entity to open it or move the mouse over the entity to display the tooltip.

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Note**.

**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Note** .

- 2 Click a point on the document where you want to insert the note.  
The Note applet appears.
- 3 Enter the text that you want in the note.
- 4 To change the default font, select **Font** and the type of font.
- 5 From the **File** menu, select **Information**.  
The Note Information dialog box appears.
- 6 In **Name**, **Author** and **Key Words** fields, enter the required text for the note.
- 7 Click **OK**.
- 8 Close the Note applet.  
The note appears on the drawing and in the Markup Navigation Tree.
- 9 Right-click outside the note area to complete the modification.
- 10 To move the note, click and drag it.

**Note:** To edit a note, double-click the note symbol  in the Markup Navigation Tree or in the workspace to open the Note dialog box.

## Nesting Markup Entities

You can add the Attachment, Hyperlink, or Note markup entities as a nested child to any markup entity.

- 1 Add a markup entity to a 2D file (for example, a Line entity).
- 2 From the workspace or Markup Tree, select the Line entity.
- 3 From the **Markup** menu, select **Attachment**, **Hyperlink**, or **Note**.

**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Attachment** , **Hyperlink** , or **Note** .

In the Markup Tree, the selected markup entity appears as a child of the Line (parent) entity.

## 3D-Specific Markups

When marking up 3D files, you can attach text or a note, as well as create markup measure entities. The measure options in Markup mode work slightly different than in View mode.

**Note:** When you are creating a markup entity, you can press the **Escape** key to cancel.

*See Also [Marking up 2D and 3D Files](#)*

## 3D Markup Entities

You can create many different types of markup entities. To access the markup entities, from the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**.

The markup entities are:

Option	Description
<b>Note:</b>	To complete a markup entity (for example, to finish creating a box), simply right-click in the AutoVue workspace.
Text	<p>Add text to the markup. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>3D Text</b> .</p> <p><i>See <a href="#">Adding Text</a></i></p>
Attachment	<p>Add an attachment entity to the markup. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Arc</b> .</p> <p><i>See <a href="#">Adding an Attachment</a></i></p>

Option	Description
Hyperlink	<p>Click the workspace to attach a hyperlink. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Hyperlink</b> .</p> <p><b>See <i>Adding a Hyperlink</i></b></p>
Intellistamp	<p>Add a stamp on a document in a connected and disconnected environment. Includes specific document and user information (metadata) pulled directly from the DMS/ERP/PLM/UCM system. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Intellis-tamp</b> .</p> <p>Refer to the <i>AutoVue Mobile User Manual</i>.</p>
Measurement	<p>Create markup measure entities. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Distance</b> , <b>Area</b> , <b>Angle</b> , <b>Arc</b> , or <b>Minimum Distance</b> .</p> <p><b>See <i>Creating 3D Markup Measure Entities</i></b></p>
Note	<p>Add a note to the markup. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Note</b> .</p> <p><b>See <i>Adding a Note</i></b></p>
Signoff	<p>Create an approval stamp containing information about the markup author, date and time of creation. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Signoff</b> .</p> <p><b>See <i>Adding Signoff Entities</i></b></p>
Stamp	<p>Click and drag a stamp to the markup. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Stamp</b> .</p> <p><b>See <i>Adding a Stamp</i></b></p>

## Creating 3D Markup Measure Entities

When marking up 3D files, you can create markup measure entities. The measure options in Markup mode work slightly different than in View mode.

When measuring in Markup mode, the specified measurement lines and values are displayed on the current active markup layer as entities. These entities can be moved, resized, or deleted.

**Note:** If you manipulate a part of a model, the measure entity values do not update accordingly.

AutoVue provides the option to “snap” to different entity types on the model.

In Markup mode, you can choose from several measurement options to create markup measure entities. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Measurement** to access the following measure options:

Name	Description
Angle	Measure the precise angle between three vertices or any two edges, planes or faces. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Angle</b> 
Arc	Measure the precise radius, length and angle of any arc and calculate the center point location. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Arc</b> 
Distance	Measure the precise distance between any two Vertex, Edge, Midedge, Arc Center or Face. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Distance</b> 
Minimum Distance	Measure minimum distance between any two Vertex, Edge, Midedge, Arc Center or Face. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Minimum Distance</b>  <b>Note:</b> You cannot create a markup measure entity when measuring minimum distance.

Name	Description
Vertex Coordinates	Provide the coordinates of each vertex. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click <b>Vertex Coordinates</b>  .

## 3D Snapping Modes

The **snapping modes** available allow you to select or snap to different entity types on a model. For example, if you select **Vertex**, all vertices are highlighted and when you move the cursor over a vertex, a snap box appears.

The snapping modes allow you to snap to vertices, edges, faces, planes, and arcs.

Button	Snap to	Description
	Vertex	Vertices are highlighted on the model. When moving the cursor over a vertex, a snap box appears.
	Edge	Edges are highlighted on the model. When moving the cursor over an edge, a snap box appears.
	Face	Faces are highlighted when you move the cursor over a face and a snap triangle appears.

## Measuring Distance

Use the **Distance** option to measure the precise distance between two vertices, edges, mid-edges, arc centers, faces, or any combination of entity types.

**Note:** When measuring the distance between faces, if the faces are parallel, AutoVue compares the shortest distance between the parallel faces.

- From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Distance**. The Measurement Entities dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Distance** .

- From the Measured Distance Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the distance.
- Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.

### See *3D Snapping Modes*

All entities of the selected entity types are highlighted on the model.

- 4 On the model, select the entity you want to measure from.

The location of the entity appears in the **From**  field.

**Note:** If you want to take more than one measurement from the same starting point, select the **Fix Position** check box.

- 5 Click inside the **To**  field to select the entity type that you want to measure to.
- 6 Select the snapping modes that you want to select as the end point for the measurement.  
All entities of the selected entity types are highlighted on the model.
- 7 On the model, select the entity you want to measure to.

The location of the entity appears in the **To**  field.

- 8 Click again to complete the measurement.  
The measured line path appears in a value box entity on the current active markup. The measured distance, Delta-X, Delta-Y and Delta-Z appear in the Measurement Entities dialog box.
  - 9 Drag to move the measured line path.
  - 10 Click on the measured line path.
  - 11 To move the value box, click and drag it to anywhere on the drawing.
  - 12 To resize the value box, select it and then click and drag the frame handles.
- Note:** Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
- 13 Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog box.

## Calibrating Distance

- 1 Measure the distance between two points.

### See *Measuring Distance*

- 2 In the Measurement Entities dialog box click **Calibrate**.
- 3 The Distance Calibration dialog box appears displaying the measured distance.
- 4 In the Measured Distance list, select the unit to which you want to calibrate the distance.
- 5 Select **Calibrate to** and enter a value if you want to calibrate the distance to a value.  
Select **Set Factor** and enter a value if you want to calibrate the distance by a factor.
- 6 Click **OK**.

The calibration result appears in the Measurement Entities dialog box.

- 7 Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog box.

## Measuring an Angle

Use the **Angle** option to measure the precise angle between three vertices, any two edges, planes or faces or any combination of entity types.

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Angle**.  
The Measurement Entities dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Angle** .

- 2 Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.

### **See 3D Snapping Modes**

All entities of the selected entity types are highlighted on the model.

- 3 To measure the angle between an entity type and a plane, select the **With Plane** check box. From the Plane list, select the plane.
- 4 From the Measured Angle Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the angle.
- 5 On the model, click points to define the angle.  
Angle arms appear with an arc connecting them.
- 6 Click again to complete the measurement.  
The measured line path, measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The measurement appears in the Measurement Entities dialog box.
- 7 To change the size of the arc, click and drag it to the desired size.
- 8 To move the value box, click and drag it to anywhere on the markup.
- 9 To resize the value box, select it and then click and drag the frame handles.  
**Note:** Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
- 10 Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog box.

## Measuring an Arc

Use the **Arc** option to measure the precise radius, length and angles of any arc on the model. It also calculates the center point location.

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Arc**.  
The Measurement Entities dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Arc** .

- 2 Select **Arc Entity** if you want to measure a predefined arc.

All arc and circles are highlighted on the model. Snapping modes are disabled.

- 3 Select **From 3 Points** if you want to measure the arc between three points. Snapping modes are displayed.

Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.

### **See 3D Snapping Modes**

All entities of the selected entity types are highlighted on the model.

- 4 From the Dist. Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the arc distance.
- 5 From the Angles Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the angle.
- 6 If you selected **From 3 Points**, click three points to define the arc. The points are joined by an arc.  
If you selected **Arc Entity**, click the edge of an arc. The arc is highlighted.
- 7 Click to complete the measurement.  
The measured line path, measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The measurements for center point coordinates, radius, diameter, arc length, start and end of angle and sweep appear in the Measurement Entities dialog box.
- 8 To move the value box, click and drag it to anywhere on the markup.
- 9 To resize the value box, select it and then click and drag the frame handles.  
**Note:** Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
- 10 Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog box.

## Calibrating an Arc

- 1 Measure an arc on the model.

### **See Measuring an Arc**

- 2 In the Measurement Entities dialog box, click **Calibrate**.  
The Calibration dialog box appears displaying the measured distance.
- 3 From the Measured Rad. list, select the unit to which you want to calibrate the distance.
- 4 Select **Calibrate to** and enter a value if you want to calibrate to a value.  
Select **Set Factor** and enter a value if you want to calibrate by a factor.
- 5 Click **OK**.  
The calibration result appears in the Measurement Entities dialog box.
- 6 Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog box.

## Measuring Minimum Distance

With the **Minimum Distance** option you can measure the minimum distance between model parts, as well as any two points from the selection sets: vertices, edges, mid-edges, arc centers, faces or any combination of entity types.

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Minimum Distance**.

The Measurement Entities dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Minimum Distance** .

- 2 Click  **Set 1**.
- 3 Select **Entity** if you want to measure the distance between model parts. Snapping modes are displayed. Select **Geometry** if you want to measure the distance between entity types.
- 4 If you selected **Entity**, select a part or parts on the model. The model part or parts appear in the list under **Set 1** and are highlighted on the model and in the Model Tree.
- 5 If you selected **Geometry**, select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.

### **See 3D Snapping Modes**

All entities of the selected entity type are highlighted on the model.

- 6 Select the entity or entities on the model. The selected entities appears in the list under **Set 1** and are highlighted on the model.

**Note:** To reset a **Set**, click **Clear**. To clear items from a **Set**, select the items and press the **Delete** key. To deselect a part or entity type on the model, press the **Control** key and left-click the part or entity type.

- 7 Click  **Set 2**.
- 8 Repeat steps 4 through 6. The model part appears in the list under **Set 2**.
- 9 From the Measured Min. Distance Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the distance.
- 10 Click **Compute**. The minimum distance from the first set of entities to the second set is highlighted by a line. The measured line path, measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The X, Y and Z coordinates for Position 1 and X, Y and Z coordinates for Position 2 appear in the Measurement Entities dialog box.

- 11 Click and drag the value box anywhere on the markup.
- 12 To resize the value box, select it and then click and drag the frame handles.  
**Note:** Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
- 13 Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog box.

## Measuring Vertex Coordinates

The **Vertex Coordinates** option provides the coordinates of vertices on the model.

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Vertex Coordinate**.  
The Measurement Entities dialog box appears.  
**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Vertex Coordinate** .
- 2 Scroll over the vertex whose coordinates you want to add to the markup.  
The X, Y, and Z coordinates appear in a tooltip.
- 3 Click the vertex.  
The X, Y, and Z coordinates and unit appear a value box entity on the current active markup layer and in the Measurement Entities dialog box.
- 4 Click and drag the value box anywhere on the markup.  
Click and drag the frame handles to enlarge the value box.  
**Note:** Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
- 5 To remove the highlighted vertices on the model, click **Close** in the Measurement Entities dialog box.

## Adding Text

With AutoVue, you can add a 3D text box entity to a markup.

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Text**.  
**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **3D Text** .
- 2 The Attach To dialog box appears and provides six snapping options:

Option	Description
None	Does not snap to the model.
Vertex	Snaps to a vertex on the model.

---

Option	Description
Edge	Snaps to an edge on the model.
Face	Snaps to a face on the model.
Mid Edge	Snaps to the middle of an edge on the model.
Ar Center	Snaps to the center point of an arc on the model.

---

- To insert a text box that snaps to a part of the drawing with a leader line, select one of the snapping modes.  
**See 3D Snapping Modes**
- Click and drag on the drawing to define the dimensions of the text box.
- Click in the text box and enter the text you want to add.  
**Note:** The height of the text box will change to accommodate the text.
- To change text box font properties, from the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Font**.  
The Font dialog box appears allowing you to change the font type, style, and size.  
**Note:** From the respective font property lists on the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also modify the font type, style, and size.
- Click **OK** to implement the font changes and to close the Font dialog box.
- To change the line properties or fill color of the text box, select the text box, then from the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select the property or properties you want to change.  
**Note:** From the respective line property lists on the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also modify the line style, line thickness, fill types, and fill colors.
- Right-click outside the text area to complete the modification.  
The text appears on the drawing and in the Markup Navigation Tree.
- To move the text box, click and drag it to anywhere on the drawing.
- To resize the text box, select it and then click and drag the frame handles.  
**Note:** To edit the text, double-click the text box in the tree or in the workspace.

## Attaching a Note

You can attach longer comments as a markup sticky note on the drawing. A note displays in the workspace as a standard size graphical symbol . Each note is labelled as *Note*<*n*>—where *n* represents the numerical order of occurrence of the note (for example, the first note is labelled as *Note1*). To read the note, double-click the entity to open it or move the mouse over the entity to display the tooltip.

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Note**. The Attach To dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Note** .

- 2 In the Attach To dialog box, click the entity type that you want to attach the note to.

### **See 3D Snapping Modes**

- 3 Select the entity on the model that you want to attach a note to. The Note applet appears.
- 4 Type the text that you want in the applet.
- 5 From the **File** menu, select **Information**. The Note Information dialog box appears.
- 6 To change the default font, select **Font** and the type of font.
- 7 Close the Note applet. The note symbol appears on the entity and in the Markup Navigation Tree.
- 8 Right-click outside the note area to complete the modification.

**Note:** To edit a note, double-click on the note.

**Note:** Whenever an entity is attached to a 3D model, the anchor point (the point at which the entity is attached) is highlighted by a small square. The square is visible only when the anchor point is visible. This feature allows you to precisely identify the location of the anchor point and whether the associated entities are visible or hidden.

## Nesting Markup Entities

You can add the Attachment or Hyperlink markup entities as a nested child to any markup entity.

- 1 Add a markup entity to a 3D file (for example, a Text entity).
- 2 From the workspace or Markup Tree, select the Text entity.
- 3 From the **Markup** menu, select **Attachment** or **Hyperlink**.

**Note:** From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Attachment**  or **Hyperlink** .

In the Markup Tree, the selected markup entity appears as a child of the Text (parent) entity.

## Working with Markup Entities

With AutoVue, you can assign a markup entity its own color, the same color as the current active layer, or a custom color. You also have the option of grouping markup entities. When you group markup entities, you can manage the group as you would a single entity.

In Markup mode, there are several options for modifying an entity. You can apply these options to selected pre-existing entities or to new entities that you add.

**Note:** You can edit certain markup entities after they have been created. To do so, in the Markup Navigation Tree, right-click the markup entity and then select **Edit**.

**See** *Go To a Markup Entity*  
*Selecting Markup Entities*  
*Moving a Markup Entity*  
*Transforming Markup Entities*  
*Hiding Markup Entities*  
*Grouping and Ungrouping Markup Entities*  
*Deleting Markup Entities*

## Go To a Markup Entity

**Go To** restores the view state to when an entity was first created. Opening an existing Markup file also restores the last saved view state.

From the Markup Navigation Tree, right-click the markup entity that you want to view and select **Go To**.

AutoVue displays the markup page containing the entity.

If you selected a markup entity that is on another page of the Markup file, the page containing that entity will be displayed.

## Selecting Markup Entities

To select a markup entity, click the markup entity's outer edge.

**Note:** To select multiple entities, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting. The markup entity or entities are selected. You can also select the markup entities from the Markup Navigation Tree. To select multiple entities, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.

## Moving a Markup Entity

- In the Markup Navigation Tree or in the workspace, select the markup entity or entities that you want to move.

**Note:** To select multiple entities, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.

**See *Selecting Markup Entities***

- In the workspace, click and drag the selected markup entity or entities to anywhere in the workspace.

## Transforming Markup Entities

**Note:** This menu option is only available for 2D and EDA files.

AutoVue provides the option to flip or rotate markup entities.

## Rotating all Markup Entities

From the **Markup** menu, select **Transform**, and then select **Rotate**. From the menu that appears, you have one of two options to select from:

- **Rotate Clockwise:** Rotates the markup entity 90 degrees in the clockwise direction.
- **Rotate Counter Clockwise:** Rotates the markup entity 90 degrees in the counter-clockwise direction.

**Note:** The markup entities rotate with respect to the center point of the drawing.

## Rotating a selected Markup Entity

**Note:** This feature only supports the Text and Stamp markup entities.

- 1 From the workspace or the Markup Navigation Tree, select the markup entity to rotate.

**Note:** It is not possible to select multiple markup entities to rotate.

- 2 From the **Markup** menu, select **Object**, and then select **Rotate**.
- 3 Rotate the markup entity by clicking and dragging its control points. Pressing the Shift key will dragging with snap the rotation to 45 degree intervals.

## Flipping all Markup Entities

From the **Markup** menu, select **Transform**, and then select **Flip**. From the menu that appears, you have one of two options to select from:

- **Flip Horizontal Axis:** Flips the direction of the horizontal axis of the markup entity.
- **Flip Vertical Axis:** Flips the direction of the vertical axis of the markup entity.

**Note:** The horizontal and vertical axes are aligned with the center of the drawing.

## Hiding Markup Entities

To hide all markup entities, do the following:

- 1 From the **Markup** menu, select **Hide Markups**.  
**Note:** A check mark appears next to the Hide Markups option and the markup entities are hidden on the Markup file.
- 2 To undo the hide option, from the **Markup** menu, deselect **Hide Markups**.

To hide selected a Markup file, do the following:

- 3 In the Markup Navigation Tree, right-click the Markup file, then select **Hide**.
- 4 To undo the hide option, right-click the file name again and select **Show**.

## Grouping and Ungrouping Markup Entities

When you group markup entities, you can move, delete, copy and paste, transform, or perform any modification on the group of entities that you would on a single markup entity.

**Note:** You can only group markup entities created on the same page.

## Grouping Markup Entities

- 1 In the Markup Navigation Tree or from the workspace, select the markup entities that you want to group.

**See *Selecting Markup Entities***

- 2 From the **Markup** menu, select **Object**, and then select **Group**.  
The group of entities appear in the tree under *Group*.

**Note:** You can also right-click the selected markup entities and then select **Group**.

- 3 Perform any modifications.  
The modifications are applied to all the entities in the group.

## Ungrouping Markup Entities

- 1 In the Markup Navigation Tree or the workspace, select the group that you want to ungroup.
- 2 From the **Markup** menu, select **Object**, and then select **UnGroup**.  
The group of entities appear on the markup as individual entities.

## Deleting Markup Entities

- 1 Select the markup entity that you want to delete. To select multiple markup entities, press the **Shift** or **Control** keys while selecting.

**See *Selecting Markup Entities***

- 2 From the Markup Properties toolbar, click **Delete Markups** .  
The selected entity or entities are deleted from the current active file.

**Note:** You can also press the **Delete** key to delete the markup entities. Alternatively, right-click the entity in the workspace or Markup Navigation Tree, and select **Delete**.

## Formatting Markup Entity Properties

With AutoVue, you can modify the formatting of a markup entity via the **Format** option from the **Markup** menu, or via the Markup Entity Properties dialog box.

**See Also *Using the Markup Entity Properties Dialog Box***

When creating a markup entity, you have the option to change the line color, line style, line thickness, arrow style, fill color, and fill type. Additionally, you can assign the markup entity the same color as the layer.

**See *Changing Line Color***  
***Changing Line Style***

***Changing Line Thickness***

***Changing Arrow Style***

***Changing Fill Type***

***Changing Fill Color***

***Assigning a Markup Entity the Same Color as the Layer***

## Changing Line Color

- 1 Select the markup entity or entities for which you want to change the line color.

**See *Selecting Markup Entities***

- 2 From the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Line Color**. The Line Color dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also click **Line Color**



. Alternatively, right-click the entity in the workspace or Markup Navigation Tree, select **Format**, and then select **Line Color**.

- 3 From the Line Color list, select the color that you want for the entity.

**Note:** Selecting **Bylayer**  changes the markup entity color to the color of the layer.

- 4 To define a custom line color, from the Line Color list, select **Custom Color**



- 5 From the Color dialog box that appears, select a color and click **OK**.
- 6 Click **OK** to close the Line Color dialog box.

The line color changes for the selected markup entity or entities.

**Note:** Any new entities that you create will have the new line color.

## Changing Line Style

**Note:** The current line style is highlighted in the **Line Style** option.

- 1 Select the markup entity or entities for which you want to change the line style.

**See *Selecting Markup Entities***

- 2 From the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Line Style**. Select the new line style from the options provided. The line style changes for the selected markup entity or entities.

**Note:** From the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also click **Line Style**



. Alternatively, right-click the entity in the workspace or Markup Navigation Tree, select **Format**, and then select **Line Style**.

**Note:** Any new entities that you create will have the new line style.

## Changing Line Thickness

**Note:** The current line thickness is highlighted in the **Line Thickness** option.

- 1 Select the markup entity or entities for which you want to change the line thickness.

**See *Selecting Markup Entities***

- 2 From the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Line Thickness**. Select the new line thickness from the options provided. The line thickness changes for the selected markup entity or entities.

**Note:** From the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also click **Line**

**Thickness** . Alternatively, right-click the entity in the workspace or Markup Navigation Tree, select **Format**, and then select **Line Thickness**.

- 3 To define a custom line thickness, from the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, select **Line Thickness**, and then select **Customize**. The Custom Thickness dialog box appears.
- 4 In the **Line Thickness** field, enter an integer value in pixels.
- 5 Click **OK** to close the Custom Thickness dialog box.

**Note:** Any new markup entities that you create will have the new line thickness.

## Changing Arrow Style

AutoVue gives you the option to add an arrow head to certain markup entities. For example, you can change the arrow style of the line, polyline, arc, freestyle, and polygon markup entities.

- 1 Select the markup line entity or entities for which you want to change the arrow style.

**See *Selecting Markup Entities***

- 2 From the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Arrow Style**. Select the new arrow style from the options provided. The arrow style changes for the selected markup line entity or entities.

**Note:** From the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also click **Arrow Style**



. Alternatively, right-click the entity in the workspace or Markup Navigation Tree, select **Format**, and then select **Arrow Style**.

**Note:** Any new entities that you create will have the new arrow style.

## Changing Fill Type

- 1 Select the markup entity or entities for which you want to change the fill type.

**See *Selecting Markup Entities***

- 2 From the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Fill Type**. The Fill Type dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also click **Fill Type**



. Alternatively, right-click the entity in the workspace or Markup Navigation Tree, select **Format**, and then select **Fill Type**.

- 3 From the Fill Type list, select the fill type that you want for the markup entity:
  - Select **Solid Fill**, if you want the fill color to be solid.
  - Select **Transparent Fill**, if you want the fill color to be transparent.
  - Select **No Fill**, if you do not want any fill color.
- 4 Click **OK**.

The fill type changes for the selected markup entity or entities.

**Note:** Any new markup entities that you create will have the new fill type.

## Changing Fill Color

- 1 Select the markup entity or entities for which you want to change the fill color.

**See *Selecting Markup Entities***

- 2 From the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Fill Color**. The Fill Color dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also click **Fill Color**



. Alternatively, right-click the entity in the workspace or Markup Navigation Tree, select **Format**, and then select **Fill Color**.

- 3 From the Fill Color list, select the color that you want for the markup entity.

**Note:** Selecting **Bylayer**  changes the markup entity color to the color of the layer and selecting **Line Color**  assigns the same color as the markup entity's line.

- 4 To define a custom line color, from the Line Color list, select **Custom Color** .
- 5 From the Color dialog box that appears, select a color and click **OK**. The fill color changes for the selected markup entity or entities.
- 6 Click **OK** to close the Fill Color dialog box.

**Note:** Any new markup entities that you create will have the new fill color.

## Assigning a Markup Entity the Same Color as the Layer

- 1 Select the markup entity or entities for which you want to assign the color of the layer that they belong to.

**See *Selecting Markup Entities***

- 2 To assign the line color:
  - From the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Line Color**. The Line Color dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also click **Line Color**



. Alternatively, right-click the entity in the workspace or Markup Navigation Tree, select **Format**, and then select **Line Color**.

- From the Line Color list, select **Bylayer** .
- 3 To assign the fill color:
  - From the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Fill Color**. The Fill Color dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also click **Fill Color**



- From the Fill Color list, select **Bylayer** .
- 4 Click **OK**. The selected markup entity or entities change to the color of the layer that the entity belongs to.

## Changing Font

You can change the font of the text box, leader, and measurement entities.

- 1 Create the markup entity that you want.
- 2 From the workspace or the Markup Navigation Tree, select the markup entity for which you want to modify the font then do one of the following:
  - From **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Font**. The Font dialog box appears. From the lists select the font, font style, and font size. You also can select to add a strikeout and underline by selecting their check boxes. Click **OK** to close the dialog box and implement the changes.
  - From the Markup Entity toolbar, select the font, font size, and font style (bold, italic, and underline) from their respective lists and buttons. The font changes are implemented.

## Changing Measurement Units and Symbols

You can change the unit of measure and add a symbol to a measurement and have it appear on the drawing.

- 1 Create the markup measure entity that you want.
  - See *Creating 2D non-Vector Markup Measure Entities*
  - *Creating 2D Vector Markup Measure Entities*
  - *Creating EDA Markup Measure Entities*
  - *Creating 3D Markup Measure Entities*
- 2 Double-click the measurement that you want to change the unit of measure or add a symbol to.

The appropriate Measure dialog box appears.
- 3 Deselect **Display Unit** check box if you want to hide the unit on the drawing. It is selected by default.
- 4 From the Units list, select the unit that you want to change the measurement to.
- 5 From the Symbol list, select the symbol that you want to add to the measurement.
- 6 Click **OK**.

The unit of measure changes and the selected symbol is added to the measurement and appears in the workspace.

## Using the Markup Entity Properties Dialog Box

You can use the Markup Entity Properties dialog box to modify markup entities.

- 1 Select the markup entity you want to modify. To select multiple markup entities, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.
- 8 From the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Markup Entity Attributes**.

The Markup Entity Properties dialog box appears.

**Note:** You can also right-click a markup entity in the Markup Navigation Tree or the workspace, select **Format**, and then select **Markup Entity Attributes**.

The following sections describe each option available in the Markup Entity Properties dialog box.

### Line Color

Change the line color the selected markup entity or entities.

- 1 Select the markup entity or entities for which you want to change the line color.

**See *Selecting Markup Entities***

- 2 From the Line Color list, select the color that you want for the entity.

**Note:** Selecting **Bylayer**  changes the entity color to the color of the layer.

- 3 Click **OK** to close the Markup Entity Properties dialog box.

To define a custom line color, take the following steps:

- 1 From the Line Color list, select **Custom Color** .

The Color dialog box appears.

- 2 Select a color and click **OK**.
- 3 Click **OK** to close the Markup Entity Properties dialog box.  
The line color changes for the selected markup entity or entities.

**Note:** Only selected markup entities that you create will have the new line color. To apply the new line color to any new markup entity you create, make sure no markup entity is selected before opening the Markup Entity Properties dialog box.

**See Also *Changing Line Color***

## Line Style

Change the line style for a selected markup entity or entities.

- 1 Select the markup entity you want to change the line style. To select multiple markup entities, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.

**See *Selecting Markup Entities***

- 2 From the Line Style list, select the required line style.
- 3 Click **OK** to close the Markup Entity Properties dialog box.  
The line style changes for the selected markup entity or entities.

**Note:** Any new markup entities that you create will have the new line style.

**See Also *Changing Line Style***

## Line Thickness

Change the line thickness for a selected markup entity or entities.

- 1 Select the markup entity you want to change the line thickness. To select multiple markup entities, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.

**See *Selecting Markup Entities***

- 2 From the Line Thickness list, select the required line thickness.  
The line thickness changes for the selected markup entity or entities.

To define a custom line thickness, take the following steps:

- 1 From the Line Thickness list, select **Customize**.
- 2 In the **Width (Pixels)** field, enter the desired width.
- 3 Click **OK** to close the Markup Entity Properties dialog box.  
The line thickness changes for the selected markup entity or entities.

**Note:** Any new markup entities that you create will have the new line thickness.

**See Also *Changing Line Thickness***

## Width (Pixels)

Customize the line thickness when **Customize** is selected in the Line Thickness list. When other line thicknesses are selected, this field displays its value in pixels but cannot be edited.

**See *Line Thickness***

## Arrow Style

Add an arrow head at one or both ends of a markup line entity.

- 1 Select the markup line entity you want to change the arrow style. To select multiple markup line entities, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.
- 2 From the Arrow Style list, select the style of arrow that you want for the markup line entity.
- 3 Click **OK** to close the Markup Entity Properties dialog box.

The arrow style changes for the selected markup line entity or entities.

**Note:** Any new markup line entities that you create will have the new arrow style.

**See Also** *Changing Arrow Style*

## Fill Type

Change the transparency for selected markup entity or entities.

- 1 Select the markup entity you want to change the fill type. To select multiple markup entities, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.
- 2 From the Fill Type list, select the fill type that you want for the markup entity:
  - Select **Solid Fill**, if you want the fill color to be solid.
  - Select **Transparent Fill**, if you want the fill color to be transparent.
  - Select **No Fill**, if you do not want any fill color.
- 3 Click **OK** to close the Markup Entity Properties dialog box.

The fill type changes for the selected markup entity or entities.

**Note:** Any new markup entities that you create will have the new fill type.

**See Also** *Changing Fill Type*

## Fill Color

Change the line color, fill color, and fill type for a selected markup entity or entities.

- 1 Select the markup entity you want to change the fill color. To select multiple markup entities, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.
- 2 From the Fill Color list, select the color that you want for the markup entity.

**Note:** Selecting **Bylayer**  changes the markup entity color to the color of the layer.

To define your own color, take the following steps:

- 1 From the Fill Color list, select **Custom Color** .  
The Color dialog box appears.
- 2 Select a color and click **OK**.  
The fill color changes for the selected markup entity or entities.
- 3 Click **OK** to close the Markup Entity Properties dialog box.  
The fill type changes for the selected markup entity or entities.  
**Note:** Any new markup entities that you create will have the new fill color.  
**See Also** *Changing Fill Color*

## Markup Layers

You can move selected markup entities to a specific layer—the markup entities will inherit the properties of the layer.

- 1 From the Markup Layer list, select the layer you want to make active.
- 2 Click **OK** to close the Markup Entity Properties dialog box.  
The selected layer appears in the workspace.  
**See Also** *Setting the Active Markup Layer*

## Leader Alignment

With the Leader markup entity, you can adjust the location of the leader line's anchor point to the text box. The Leader Alignment list has the following option for anchor point location with respect to the text box: Top Left, Top Center, Top Right, Center Left, Center, Center Right, Bottom Left, Bottom Center, and Bottom Right.

## Text Box Visibility

You can choose to hide the surrounding box for the Leader, Text, and 3D Text markup entities.



# Printing

With AutoVue, you can print and preview files. Original files can be printed on their own or with associated markups and overlays. You can also choose which markup layers to make visible so that they can print.

With the **Batch Print** option, you can send a list of files to print at the same time.

When printing a file, there are print properties that you can define. From the **File** menu, select **Print** to display the following properties:

Option	Description
Print	Define the print options. <b>See <i>Configuring the Print Options</i></b>
Margins	Define the margin settings. <b>See <i>Setting the Margins</i></b>
Headers/Footers	Define the headers/footers to be included on every page printed. <b>See <i>Adding a Header and Footer</i></b>
Watermark	Define the watermark to be included on every page printed. <b>See <i>Adding a Watermark</i></b>
Pen Settings	Change the thickness assigned to a pen. <b>See <i>Creating a New Pen Setting</i></b>

## Print Options

From the **Options** tab of the Print Properties dialog, you can define options for the printed file.

Option	Type	Description
Printer	Modify	Select a printer and configure print properties, such as paper size, number of copies, and so on.
	Paper size	Displays selected paper size.

Option	Type	Description
	Orientation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Portrait</b> - Specify if file should be printed portrait</li> <li>• <b>Landscape</b> - Specify if the file should be printed landscape</li> <li>• <b>Auto</b> - Specify if orientations should be printed as saved in the file</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Option is available with Java 2 and is only enabled for PDF and word documents.</p>
	Units	Select a unit from the drop-down list to set the unit for <b>Scaling</b> and <b>Alignment/Offset</b> . The available units are pixels, inches and millimeters.
Scaling	Fit to Page	Scales the image to fit on the output page.
	Factor	Scales the image according to the scaling factors that you have manually entered in the input fields.
	Scale	Scales the image according to a percentage. You can select a predefined scaling factor or manually enter a custom scaling factor. <b>Note:</b> Decimal places are accepted.
Alignment/Offset		Specify where the drawing will appear on the printout. Some of the available options are Top-Left, Center-Right, Bottom-Center, and so on. <b>Note:</b> You can define custom alignment by entering a X and Y value.
Document Pages		Specify the document pages to print: <b>All</b> , <b>Current</b> or <b>Range</b> .
Page Area		Select the page area to print.
	Extents	Print the extent of the document.
	Displayed	Print the area displayed in the View window. <b>Note:</b> Option is only enabled when <b>Current</b> is selected for Document Pages.

Option	Type	Description
	Limits	Prints the file limits instead of extents. <b>Note:</b> Option is only enabled when <b>Current</b> is selected for Document Pages.
	Selected	Print selected area. When option is selected, the select button is enabled allowing you to select an area on the drawing. <b>Note:</b> Option will only be enabled when <b>Current</b> is selected for Document Pages.
Force to Black		Force all colors to black.
High Resolution		Prints the file with more definition. <b>Note:</b> AutoVue Web Version is based on Java 1.1 to make it compatible with the current browsers. One drawback with Java 1.1 is its limited support for printing -- the print resolution is limited to 72 dpi. AutoVue implements and delivers this limited print capability as part of the package. Oracle has identified the need for higher resolution and has implemented a solution for High Resolution and Large Format printers/plotters output for client machines running on a Windows platform.
Output a single page		Limits output to a single page when the scaling options selected causes a single page to span over several pages.
Print Row Headers		Print row headers. <b>Note:</b> Option is only enabled for spreadsheets, archive and database files.
Print Column Headers		Print column headers. <b>Note:</b> Option is only enabled for spreadsheets, archive and database files.
Partial Preview		Display a view of the printer page, highlighting the printable area.

## Configuring the Print Options

- 1 From the **File** menu, select **Print**.  
The Print Properties dialog box appears.  
  
**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Print**  .
- 2 Click the **Options** tab.
- 3 Configure the print options.
- 4 Configure other print properties.
- 5 To view a partial view of the file, click **Partial Preview**.  
The Partial Preview dialog box appears.  
**See *Partial Preview of a File***
- 6 Click **OK** to print.  
The Print dialog box appears indicating the document is printing.

## Print Margins

From the **Margins** tab of the Print Properties dialog, you can define the top, bottom, right and left margins for the printed file. You can define:

Option	Description
Margins	Set the value for the <b>Left</b> , <b>Top</b> , <b>Right</b> , and <b>Bottom</b> margins.
Minimum	Set the acceptable minimum margins for the selected printer.
Units	Specify the unit for the margins.

## Setting the Margins

- 1 From the **File** menu, select **Print**.  
The Print Properties dialog box appears.  
  
**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Print**  .
- 2 Click the **Margins** tab.
- 3 Enter the margin that you want for **Left**, **Top**, **Right**, and **Bottom** or click **Minimum** if you want to set the margins to the minimum acceptable for the selected printer.  
  
**Note:** When you click **Minimum**, the minimum margins allowable automatically appear in the **Margins**.

- 4 From the Units list, select the unit in which you want to set the margins at.
- 5 Configure other print properties.
- 6 To view a partial view of the file, click **Partial Preview**.  
The Partial Preview dialog box appears.  
**See *Partial Preview of a File***
- 7 Click **OK** to print.  
The Print dialog box appears indicating the document is printing.

## Headers/Footers

From the **Headers/Footers** tab of the **Print Properties** dialog, you can define the headers and footers that you want to print on every page of the document. You can enter the text manually or choose from a list of **Insert Codes**.

The list of insert codes are:

- %f: Full path of document
- %v: Document Drive
- %d: Document Directory
- %b: Document Base name
- %e: Document file extension
- %n: Total document pages
- %p: Current page number
- %N: Total tiled-pages
- %P: Current tile number
- %Y: Date: Year
- %M: Date: Month
- %D: Date: Day
- %W: Date: Day of week
- %H: Time: Hour
- %U: Time: Minute
- %S: Time: Seconds
- %r: New line
- %F: Native Print Settings (Excel)

**Note:** A literal percentage mark is entered manually as %%.

You can also print system variables in headers and footers. Select a variable from the Insert Variable list. Some **Insert Variable** options are: user.name, browser and java.home.

## Adding a Header and Footer

In the Headers/Footers tab, you can manually enter text or choose from a list of Insert Codes to appear in the headers and footers. You can also print system variables.

- 1 From the **File** menu, select **Print**.  
The Print Properties dialog box appears.  
**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Print**  .
- 2 Click the **Headers/Footers** tab.
- 3 Click in the **Left**, **Center** or **Right** field and enter the text that you want to appear in the header and footer, or choose an **Insert Code** or **Insert Variable**.
- 4 To **Insert Code** in the header or footer, click **Left**, **Center** or **Right**, then select a code from the list.
- 5 To **Insert Variable** in the header or footer, click **Left**, **Center** or **Right**, then select a variable from the list.
- 6 To change the Font, click **Set Font**. The Font dialog box appears.  
From the Font list, select the type of font.  
From the Size list, select the size of font.  
To set the font **Style**, click **Bold** or **Italic** or both, then click **OK**.
- 7 In the Print Properties dialog box, configure other print properties.
- 8 To view a partial view of the file, click **Partial Preview**.  
The Partial Preview dialog box appears.  
**See *Partial Preview of a File***
- 9 Click **OK** to print.  
The Print dialog box appears indicating the document is printing.

## Native Print Settings

You can choose to include predefined headers and footers when printing an Excel file from AutoVue.

- 1 From the Print Properties dialog box, click the **Headers/Footers** tab.
- 2 Under **Headers** and **Footers**, click inside the **Left**, **Center** and **Right** fields corresponding to the header or footer position in the original file.
- 3 Select **%F: Native Print Settings (Excel)** from the Insert Code list.
- 4 Click **OK** to print.  
The Excel file's headers and footers are printed.

# Watermarks

From the **Watermark** tab of the Print Properties dialog box, you can specify a watermark that will appear on a printed file. When printing a watermark, it appears transparent on the file contents. You can choose a horizontally or vertically oriented watermark.

In addition to entering text, you can:

- set the type, size and style of font
- insert Watermark information
- print system variables

To insert Watermark information, AutoVue provides a list of codes that you can choose from. These codes are:

- %f: Full path of document
- %v: Document Drive
- %d: Document Directory
- %b: Document Base name
- %e: Document file extension
- %n: Total document pages
- %p: Current page number
- %N: Total tiled-pages
- %P: Current tile number
- %Y: Date: Year
- %M: Date: Month
- %D: Date: Day
- %W: Date: Day of week
- %H: Time: Hour
- %U: Time: Minute
- %S: Time: seconds
- %r: New line

**Note:** A literal percentage mark is entered manually as %%.

You can also print system variables in watermarks. Select a variable from the **Insert Variable** list. Some **Insert Variable** options are: user.name, browser and java.home.

## Adding a Watermark

- 1 From the **File** menu, select **Print**.  
The Print Properties dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Print** .

- 2 Click the **Watermark** tab.
- 3 Enter the **Watermark Text** that you want to appear on the file.  
To insert a code in the watermark, select a code from the Insert Code list.  
For example, if you select **%n: Total document pages**, the total number of pages for the selected file will appear in the Watermark.  
**Note:** You can insert more than one code.
- 4 To insert a system variable, select a variable from the Insert Variable list.  
For example, if you select **browser.version**, the version of the browser that the file is displayed in will appear in the Watermark.  
**Note:** You can insert more than one system variable.
- 5 To set the orientation of the watermark, click **Diagonal, Horizontal or Vertical**.
- 6 To change the Font, click **Set Font**. The Font dialog box appears.  
From the Font list, select the type of font.  
From the Size list, select the size of font.  
To set the font **Style**, click **Bold** or **Italic** or both, then click **OK**.
- 7 In the Print Properties dialog box, configure other print properties.
- 8 To view a partial view of the file, click **Partial Preview**.  
The Partial Preview dialog box appears.  
**See *Partial Preview of a File***
- 9 Click **OK** to print.  
The Print dialog box appears indicating the document is printing.

## Assigning Pen Settings

From the **Pen Settings** tab of the Print Properties dialog box, you can set the thickness of the color indices for the print file.

**Note:** AutoVue uses the default pen color indices of the native document for the vector file being viewed. You will not be able to change the color assigned to a pen with AutoVue.

- 1 From the **File** menu, select **Print**.  
The Print Properties dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Print** .

- 2 Click the **Pen Settings** tab.
- 3 Under **From/To**, select the **Color Index** for which you want to assign a new pen thickness.

**Note:** To change more than one color indices, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.

- 4 From the Units list, select the unit that you want to set for the thickness.
- 5 Click **Thickness**. The Modify Pen Thickness dialog box appears.  
Enter the new thickness, then click **OK**.  
The new **Thickness** appears beside the **Color Index**.  
**Note:** To reset the thickness, click **Reset**.
- 6 In the Print Properties dialog box, configure other print properties.
- 7 To view a partial view of the file, click **Partial Preview**.  
The Partial Preview dialog box appears.  
**See *Partial Preview of a File***
- 8 Click **OK** to print.  
The Print dialog box appears indicating the document is printing.

## Creating a New Pen Setting

- 1 Set the thickness for the color indices that you want.
- 2 Click **Save As**. The Save As dialog box appears.  
Enter a pen **Name** for your pen setting, then click **OK**.  
The new pen setting appears in the Current Pen Settings list.
- 3 In the Print Properties dialog box, click **OK** to print.  
The Print dialog box appears indicating the document is printing.

## Deleting a Pen Setting

- 1 Select the pen setting that you want to delete from the **Current Pen Settings**.
- 2 Click **Delete**.  
The pen setting disappears from the list.
- 3 Click **Cancel** to close the Print Properties dialog box.

## Partial Preview of a File

The Partial Preview dialog box displays the printable area on top of the page area so that users can have a clear idea of what will be printed.

**Note:** Option is only enabled when **Current** is selected from **Document Pages**.

- 1 Configure the print properties.
- 2 Click **Partial Preview** in the Print Properties dialog box.

The Partial Preview dialog box appears. The Partial Preview dialog box highlights the area that will be printed. The **Paper size**, **Printable Area** and **Drawing Area** are displayed.

- 3 Click **OK** to close the Partial Preview dialog box.

## Previewing a File Before Printing

You can preview a print copy of the current active file on screen according to your printer's capabilities and the print property settings.

- 1 View the file in AutoVue.
- 2 From the **File** menu, select **Print**.  
The Print Properties dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Print** .

- 3 Configure the print properties.
- 4 Click **OK**.

The file appears in Print Preview Mode in the Print Preview window.

**Note:** You can print the file from the Print Preview window by clicking **Print**. You can also zoom in and out of a file, as well as navigate from one page to another of a multi-page file.

- 5 Click **Close** to close the Print Preview window.

## Printing a File

In AutoVue you can print original files along with their Markup files and selected Markup layers together so that they appear as one file.

- 1 Open the file you want to print in AutoVue.  
To print the associated Markups, open the Markup file(s) you want to print.
- 2 If you are printing Markup file(s) and you want to print the visible layers, from the **Markup** menu, select **Markup Layers**.  
The Markup Layers dialog box appears.
- 3 Select the Markup layers you want visible.
- 4 Click **OK** to close the Markup Layers dialog box.
- 5 From the **File** menu, select **Print**.  
The Print Properties dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Print** .

- 6 Configure the print properties.
- 7 To view a partial view of the file, click **Partial Preview**.

The **Partial Preview** dialog box appears.

**See *Partial Preview of a File***

- 8 Click **OK** to print.

The Print dialog box appears indicating the document is printing.

**See Also *Previewing a File Before Printing***

***Toggling between Markup Layers***

## Batch Printing

The **Batch Print** option lets you send a list of files to print at the same time. You can also generate a batch by simultaneously opening all the files included in the batch print.

- 1 From the **File** menu, select **Batch Print**.

The Batch Print dialog box appears.

- 2 To add a file to the **List of Files to be Printed**, click **Add**. The File Open dialog box appears.

Enter a file name or click **Browse** to locate the file you want to add, then click **OK**.

The files appears in the **List of Files to be Printed**.

**Note:** To add more files to the list, repeat steps 2 to 4. To remove a file, select the file from the **List of Files to be Printed** and click **Remove**.

- 3 Click **Print** in the Batch Print dialog box.

The Print Properties dialog box appears.

- 4 Configure the print properties.

- 5 Click **OK** to print.

The Print dialog box appears indicating the document is printing.

# Conversion

Sometimes you need to translate a file to be able to use it with an application it was not created from. AutoVue provides several conversion file formats for you.

## Conversion Options

Depending on the conversion type being performed, the available options in the **Convert** dialog box will vary. These options are:

---

Option	Description
Color Depth	Select an option from the list: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>1</b> = Black and white</li><li>• <b>4</b> = 16 colors</li><li>• <b>8</b> = 256 colors</li><li>• <b>24</b> = True color</li><li>• <b>auto</b> = AutoVue selects the color depth that best matches the original file.</li></ul>
Convert to Format	A list of all the possible types of output file formats currently available for conversion. The available formats are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• CALS GP4</li><li>• Encapsulated Postscript (Raster)</li><li>• HP Laserjet Printer (HLP)</li><li>• PCX Bitmap</li><li>• PDF</li><li>• Run Length RLC File</li><li>• TIFF</li><li>• Windows Bitmap</li><li>• Compuserve GIF</li></ul>
Output	Specify the name and path of the file in which the conversion is to be stored. This file is also known as the output file. You can use <b>Browse</b> to provide AutoVue with the file's path. <b>Note:</b> If writing onto an existing file, a warning message appears, asking if you want to overwrite the existing file.

---

Option	Description
Sub-Format	The <b>Sub-Format</b> list appears when you selected <b>HP Laserjet Print, TIFF, or Compuserve GIF</b> from the <b>Convert to Format</b> list. Specify the variety of convert-to-format by selecting a sub-format.
Convert Region	<p>The area of the file to be converted. The available options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Display</b> - refers to the image to fit on the output page. For example, if you zoomed in on a particular region of the file, the zoomed portion of the file is converted.</li> <li>• <b>Extents</b> - refers to the entire extents of the file.</li> </ul>
Convert Pages	<p>The number of pages to be converted. The available options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>All</b> - converts all pages.</li> <li>• <b>Current</b> - converts the current page</li> <li>• <b>Range</b> - converts the pages indicated in the range</li> </ul>
X and Y	<p>Specify <b>X</b> and <b>Y</b> to define the resolution for the converted file.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>X</b> indicates the number of horizontal pixels</li> <li>• <b>Y</b> is the number of vertical pixels for the current active file contents.</li> </ul> <p>At times, AutoVue will preset <b>X</b> and <b>Y</b> to match the specifications of the selected conversion file format. Other times, <b>X</b> and <b>Y</b> will be available and may be changed according to your preferences. Your selection here will not affect the current display but will affect the conversion file's resolution.</p>

## PDF

With AutoVue it is possible to convert Office, 2D and EDA formats to PDF. When converted from **Markup Mode**, markups are “burned” onto the PDF. When you open the PDF, you will see the base file along with all markups.

## X and Y

Three factors affect the resolution of an image: the type of image you are converting, the output device and the acceptable file size. High-resolution scans often require large files, causing longer processing and print time. Note that a high-resolution may not produce a better-quality printed image if your output device does not recognize the higher resolution information stored in the file. To keep file sizes manageable, select the lowest resolution that provides acceptable quality on your output device.

With some file types, the **Size** option appears giving you a choice between millimeters and inches. Page sizes can be selected from the **Size** list or you can customize page sizes by configuring the Initialization file. For more information, refer to the **System Administration Guide**.

Technical Drawing Page Sizes	ISO Paper Format
A8.5" X 11.0" (216 mm X 279 mm)	A4 285 mm X 198 mm
B11.0" X 17.0" (279 mm X 432 mm)	A3 396 mm X 273 mm
C17.0" X 22.0" (432 mm X 559 mm)	A2 570 mm X 396 mm
D22.0" X 34.0" (559 mm X 864 mm)	A1 817 mm X 570 mm
E34.0" X 44.0" (864 mm X 1118 mm)	A0 1165 mm X 817 mm

## Converting a File

- 1 From the **File** menu, select **Convert**.  
The **Convert** dialog box appears.  
**Note:** The **Input** area varies according to the type of file. A word-processing file displays the file format; a raster file displays the file format and size; vector and database files display the size, file type and dimensions.
- 2 In the **Save As** field, enter the path and filename or click **Browse** to locate the directory where you want to save the converted file.  
**Note:** If writing on to an existing file, the contents of the output file will be overwritten.
- 3 Specify the conversion options.
- 4 Click **OK**. The file is converted and appears in the specified directory.

**Note:** You can convert several selected pages of a multi-page file to a multi-page TIFF.

## Changing the Pen Settings

With AutoVue, you can specify a thickness for each pen color.

**Note:** This option only applies to vector files.

- 1 From the **File** menu, select **Convert**.  
The Convert dialog box appears.
- 2 Click **Pens**.  
The Pen Settings dialog box appears.
- 3 In the **From/To** section of the Pen Settings dialog box, select the Color Index for which you want to modify the thickness.  
**Note:** To select more than one Color Index, press the **Shift** or **Control** keys while selecting.
- 4 From the **Units** list in the **Change** section of the Pen Settings dialog box, select the unit in which you want to set the thickness.
- 5 In the **Thickness** field, enter a thickness value.
- 6 Press the **Enter** key.  
The new thickness value appears beside the selected Color Index in the **From/To** section of the Pen Settings dialog box.
- 7 To save the changes that you made, click **Save As**.  
The Save As dialog box appears.
- 8 Enter a file name for the new pen settings.
- 9 Click **OK**.  
The new pen settings are saved and appear in the Current Pen Settings list.  
**Note:** To modify an existing pen setting, select the pen setting from the Current Pen Settings list, make the changes, then click **Save**.
- 10 Click **OK** to close the Pen Settings dialog box.



# AutoVue Mobile

AutoVue Mobile provides the ability to view and add markups to files in a disconnected environment. Whether you are travelling or need to share files with an external partner, you can still view files, markups, and add new markups. Additionally, when connected, you can update your backend DMS/PLM/ERP/UCM system with edits you make offline.

Using the AutoVue Mobile feature in AutoVue, you can create a Mobile Pack (a "packaged" file that contains the base file, all the external resources—fonts, XRefs—needed to fully display the file, and existing markups for the file). The streaming files and renditions can also be included when creating the Mobile Pack.

Once a Mobile Pack is created, you can view your drawing and markups by viewing the Mobile Pack. You can create new markups, consolidate them with existing markups into one markup, or create a master Markup file that loads up automatically when you view the Mobile Pack.

In a disconnected environment, depending on the markup policy defined during Mobile Pack creation, you can add markups using AutoVue Desktop Version. Markup policies define whether or not users can create/save new or existing markups, modify/delete (DMS only) existing markups, or automatically upload markups.

When you have access to your backend system, from AutoVue Web Version, you can update all the markups into the backend system. These markups are imported into the system and are associated with the base file from which you originally created the Mobile Pack.

The following sections provide details on creating a Mobile Pack, creating markups in AutoVue Mobile, understanding markup policies, and updating Markup files from Mobile Pack.

## Creating a Mobile Pack

The Mobile Pack includes the native file or streaming file, metadata, Intellistamp designs, all reference files (XRefs), and associated markups. Optionally, you can include renditions such as TIFF or PDF.

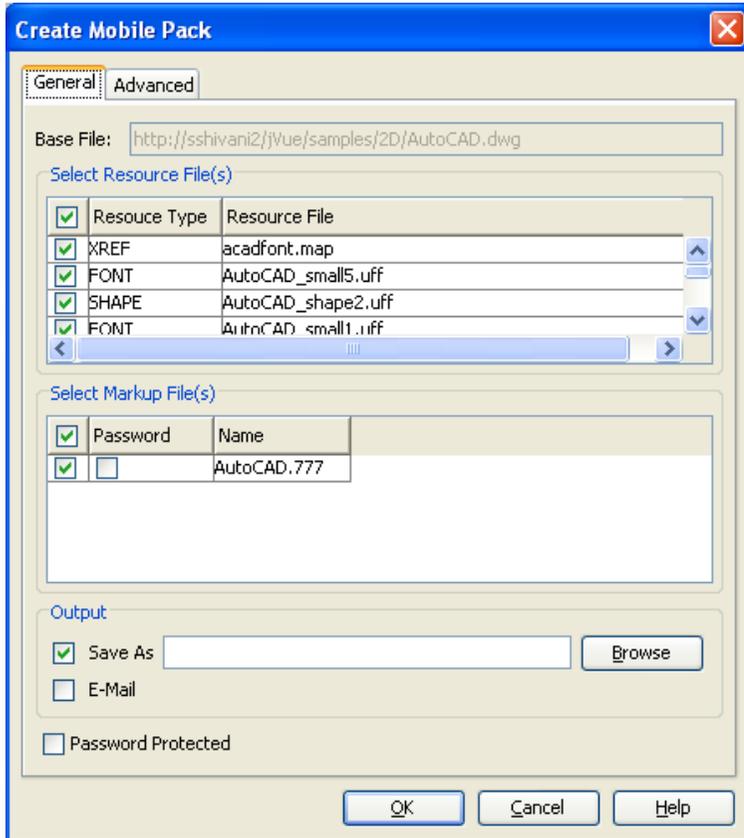
The following steps explain how to create a Mobile Pack for a file with attached Markup files:

- 1 Open the base file.

- From the AutoVue menu bar, select **Collaborate**, and then select **Create Mobile Pack**.

The Create Mobile Pack dialog box appears. It displays the General and Advanced tabs, which contain the basic and advanced options for creating a Mobile Pack, respectively.

Click the **General** tab.



The following table lists the options available in the General tab:

Option	Description
Base File	Displays the file path of the base file.

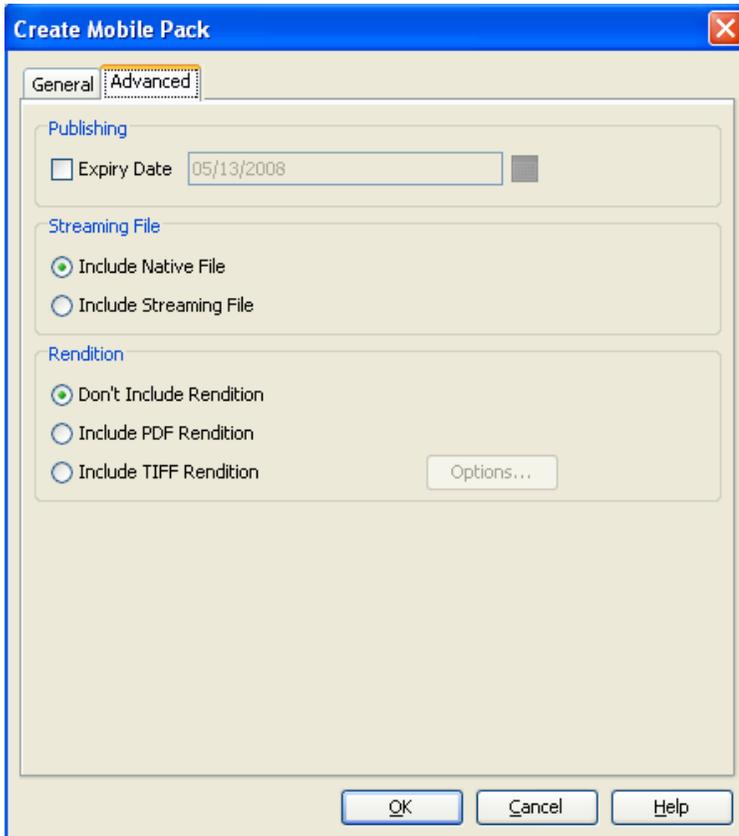
Option	Description
Select Resource File(s)	Lists all the fonts, XRefs, and other external resources that are used to fully display the base file. As a default, all resource files are selected.
Select Markup File(s)	Lists all Markup files associated with the base file. You can password protect single or multiple Markup files.
Output	You can select the output location for the Mobile Pack, and also send the file using your default e-mail client.
Password Protected	You can password protect the Mobile Pack.

- 3 From the **Select Resource File(s)** box, select the resource files to include in the Mobile Pack.
- 4 From the **Select Markup File(s)** box, select the Markup files to include in the Mobile Pack.
- 5 If you wish to password protect the Markup files, select the **Password** check box next to the Markup file.  
The Password dialog box appears.
  - a. In the **Password** field, enter a password of any length and character.
  - b. In the **Confirm Password** field, re-enter the password.
  - c. Click **OK** to close the Password dialog box.
- 6 To save the Mobile Pack locally, from the Output options, specify the location and name:
  - a. Click **Browse** to locate the directory where you want to save, or in the **Save As** field, enter the file path.
  - b. Specify a name for the Mobile Pack.
- 7 If you wish to send the Mobile Pack using your default e-mail client, select the **E-Mail** check box.
- 8 If you wish to password protect the Mobile Pack, select the **Password Protected** check box.  
The Password dialog box appears.
  - a. In the **Password** field, enter a password of any length and character.
  - b. In the **Confirm Password** field, re-enter the password.
  - c. Click **OK** to close the Password dialog box.
- 9 To select Advanced options such as including streaming file and setting an expiry date on the Mobile Pack, continue to the next step.

If you do not wish to modify advanced options, click **Finish** to complete Mobile Pack creation.

- 10 Click the **Advanced** tab.

**Note:** Depending on the Company Wide Policy settings, the Advanced tab options might be disabled. For more information on Company Wide Policy, refer to the *Installation and Administration Manual*.



The following table lists the options available in the Advanced tab:

Option	Description
Publishing	Lets you specify an expiry date for the Mobile Pack. After the expiry date, the content of the Mobile Pack will not be accessible.

Option	Description
Streaming File	<p>Lets you choose to include the native file or the streaming file in the Mobile Pack.</p> <p>There are certain limitations when loading streaming files:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Streaming files do not support blocks and views options.</li> <li>• Streaming file requirements change with each release of AutoVue. As a result, a streaming file from a previous version of AutoVue cannot be loaded in the latest release.</li> <li>• Streaming files are platform-specific. For example, a streaming file created on a Windows platform will not work on a UNIX platform, and vice versa.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> For 3D files, including the streaming file reduces the file size of the Mobile Pack. Also, since native files are not released, including the streaming file increases security.</p> <p><b>See <i>Streaming File</i></b></p>
Rendition	<p>Lets you choose to include a PDF or TIFF rendition in the Mobile Pack.</p>

- 11 If you wish to set an expiry date for the Mobile Pack, from the Publishing option, select the **Expiry Date** check box and then select a date. The Mobile Pack cannot be opened after this expiry date.
- 12 If you wish to include a streaming file, from the **Streaming File** option, select whether to include a native file or streaming file in the Mobile Pack.
- 13 If you wish, from the **Rendition** option, you can include a PDF or TIFF rendition in the Mobile Pack.
- 14 Click **OK** to complete Mobile Pack creation.  
If you selected the **E-Mail** check box, your default e-mail client opens with the Mobile Pack (\*.avp) as an attachment. Otherwise, the Mobile Pack is output to the specified location.

## Viewing Mobile Packs

Mobile Packs are opened in the same way as ordinary files. Users have access to all the external reference files (XRefs), resource files, and markups bundled with the base file. Additionally, users have the option to modify existing markups or create new ones to be associated with the Mobile Pack.

You can open a Mobile Pack as you would open any other file in AutoVue:

- 1 From the AutoVue menu bar, select **File**, and then select **Open**.

The Open dialog box appears.

- 2 Browse to the location of the Mobile Pack (\*.avp), and then select **Open**.
- 3 If the Mobile Pack is password-protected during creation, the Password dialog box appears. In the **Password** field, enter the password and then click **OK**.

The native file or streaming file opens in AutoVue with all associated XRefs, resource files, markups, and renditions.

- 4 If the Rendition option is selected during the creation of the Mobile Pack, from the AutoVue menu bar, select **Collaborate**, and then select **View Rendition from Mobile Pack**.

The rendition appears in a new AutoVue window.

**Note:** It is not possible to add markups to a rendition.

- 5 If there are associated Markup files, the **Markup Indicator** icon  appears in the status bar. To open the Markup files, click the **Markup Indicator** icon  .

**Note:** From the menu bar, you can also click **Open Markup(s)** .

The Choose a New or an Existing Markup dialog box appears.

- 6 If you wish to create a new Markup file to include in the Mobile Pack, click **Create a new Markup file**.
- 7 If you wish to open Markup files included in the Mobile Pack, click **Choose an existing Markup file**, and then select the Markup files.
- 8 If the Markup file is password-protected during creation, The Password dialog box appears. In the **Password** field, enter the password and then click **OK**.
- 9 If you wish to import a Markup file from your local machine, click **Import**. The File Open dialog box appears. Select the Markup file and click **Open**.

## Creating Markup Files

When marking up a Mobile Pack, you can create new markups or consolidate existing markups to a new markup. You cannot modify markups that are bundled during Mobile Pack creation.

To save a new Markup file with a Mobile Pack, do the following:

- 1 Create markups.
- 2 From the AutoVue toolbar, click **Save Markup**  .  
The Save Markup dialog box appears.

- 3 Enter a name for the Markup file in the **Name** field.
- 4 If you wish to password protect the Markup file, select the **Password Protected** check box.
- 5 If you wish to save the Markup file to a location on a local computer, click **Export**.
- 6 Click **OK**.
- 7 If you wish to send the updated Mobile Pack with your default e-mail client, from the AutoVue menu bar, select **Collaborate**, and then select **Reply to Mobile Pack**.

Your default e-mail client opens with the Mobile Pack (\*.avp) as an attachment.

## Defining Markup Policy

Markup policy defines a set of rules to determine certain restrictions and privileges for users of the Mobile Pack. If no markup policy is defined in the Mobile Pack, a default set of values are used.

**Note:** The default markup policy file, *MarkupPolicy.xml*, can be found in the `<AutoVue Web Version installation>\bin` folder.

The following table explains the actions included in the markup policy, their default values, and which values can be modified.

**Note:** All the following actions can be combined with certain exceptions.

Action	Description	Default
SaveNewMarkup= <TRUE FALSE>	<p>If <b>TRUE</b>, new Markup file creation inside the Mobile Pack is allowed.</p> <p>If <b>FALSE</b>, new Markup file creation inside the Mobile Pack is not allowed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For new/imported (local file) Markup file, <i>Markup Save</i> and <i>Markup Save As</i> are disabled.</li> <li>• For an existing Markup file, <i>Markup Save As</i> is disabled.</li> </ul>	TRUE

Action	Description	Default
SaveExistingMarkup= <TRUE FALSE>	If <b>TRUE</b> , the Markup file from the Mobile Pack is saved. If <b>FALSE</b> , the Markup file from the Mobile Pack cannot be saved. The <i>Markup Save</i> command will be disabled for the existing Markup file.	TRUE
EditMarkup= <TRUE FALSE>	If <b>TRUE</b> , the Markup file can be edited. If <b>FALSE</b> , the Markup file is opened as read-only. All manipulation commands at all levels—Markup file, markup layers, and markup entities—are disabled. <b>Note:</b> Setting EditMarkup=False is equivalent to the Hide Icon menu option.	TRUE
DeleteMarkup= <TRUE FALSE>	<b>Note:</b> Only available for a Mobile Pack created with DMS files. If <b>TRUE</b> , the Delete Markup menu option is enabled in the Markup File Open dialog box. If <b>FALSE</b> , the Delete Markup menu option is disabled in the Markup File Open dialog box.	TRUE
OpenMarkup= <TRUE FALSE>	If <b>TRUE</b> , the Markup file is listed in the Markup File Open dialog box. If <b>FALSE</b> , the Markup files is not listed in the Markup File Open dialog box.	TRUE
AutoOpenMarkup= <TRUE FALSE>	If <b>TRUE</b> , the Markup file opens automatically when opening the Mobile Pack. If <b>FALSE</b> , the Markup file does not open automatically when opening the Mobile Pack.	FALSE

---

Action	Description	Default
FilterAttrFromGUI.<GUI>.<Prop>.<Value>=<TRUE FALSE>	<p>If <b>TRUE</b>, the given property value is removed from the GUI definition.</p> <p>If <b>FALSE</b>, the given property value is <i>not</i> removed from the GUI definition.</p> <p>This action takes three parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>GUI:</b> GUI definition to be modified</li><li>• <b>Prop:</b> Property to be removed</li><li>• <b>Value:</b> Property value to be removed</li></ul> <p><b>Note:</b> If no Value is specified, then the UI element that represents the given property in the GUI definition is removed.</p> <p><b>For example:</b></p> <pre>&lt;Action name="FilterAttrFromGUI.Edit.CSI_MarkupType.master" default="false"&gt;</pre>	FALSE

---

The following is an example of how to define a markup policy in XML. The actions are highlighted.

```

<MarkupPolicy>
  <Action name="SaveExistingMarkup" default="true">
    <ExConditions>
      <OrOperator>
        <AndOperator>
          <AnyMarkupFileCondition Name="CSI_MarkupType" Value="master"/>
          <MarkupFileCondition name="CSI_MarkupType" value="consolidated"/>
        <MarkupFileCondition name="CSI_DocAuthor" value="$CURRENT_USER"/>
      </AndOperator>
      <NotOperator>
        <MarkupFileCondition name="CSI_DocAuthor" value="$CURRENT_USER"/>
      </NotOperator>
    </OrOperator>
  </ExConditions>
</Action>
  <Action name="EditMarkup" default="true">
    <ExConditions>
      <MarkupFileCondition name="Original" value="true"/>
    </ExConditions>
  </Action>
  <Action name="DeleteMarkup" default="true">
    <ExConditions>
      <OrOperator>
        <AndOperator>
          <AnyMarkupFileCondition name="CSI_MarkupType" value="master"/>
          <MarkupFileCondition name="CSI_MarkupType" value="consolidated"/>
        <MarkupFileCondition name="CSI_DocAuthor" value="$CURRENT_USER"/>
      </AndOperator>
      <NotOperator>
        <MarkupFileCondition name="CSI_DocAuthor" value="$CURRENT_USER"/>
      </NotOperator>
    </OrOperator>
  </ExConditions>
</Action>
  <Action name="FilterAttrFromGUI.Edit.CSI_MarkupType.master"
  default="false">
    <ExConditions>
      <AnyMarkupFileCondition name="CSI_MarkupType" value="master"/>
    </ExConditions>
  </Action>
</MarkupPolicy>

```

# Updating from Mobile Pack

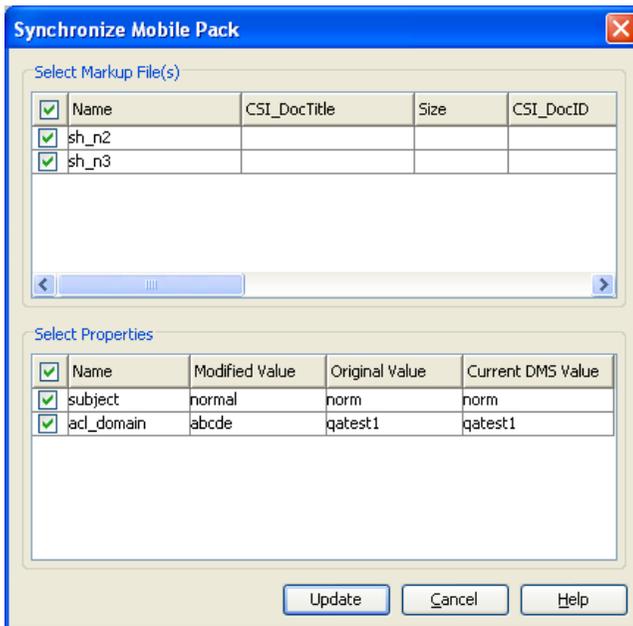
When you are finished working with the Mobile Pack, you can update your changes to the backend DMS/ERP/PLM/UCM system. You can synchronize all of the markups created in the Mobile Pack to your backend system. These markups will be associated with the file in the backend system from which you originally created the Mobile Pack.

To initiate the updating process, open the Mobile Pack and then do the following:

- 1 From the **Collaborate** menu, select **Update from Mobile Pack**.

**Note:** If you are not connected to the backend system, you are prompted for your username and password.

The Update from Mobile Pack dialog box appears. It includes the **Select Markup File(s)** and **Select Properties** lists.



- 2 The **Select Markup File(s)** list displays the markups that can be imported back to the backend system. To select a Markup file to import, select the corresponding check box.
- 3 The **Select Properties** list displays new properties if a new Intellistamp is added. The modified value, original value, and current DMS value appear in their respective columns. The modified value contains the new Intellistamp

properties for the Mobile Pack. The original value contains the Intellistamp properties in the backend system when the Mobile Pack was created. The current DMS value lists current values in the backend system.

4 To select a property to update, from the Select Properties list, select the corresponding check box.

5 Click **Update**.

The Markup files and attributes in the backend system updates from your local Mobile Pack.

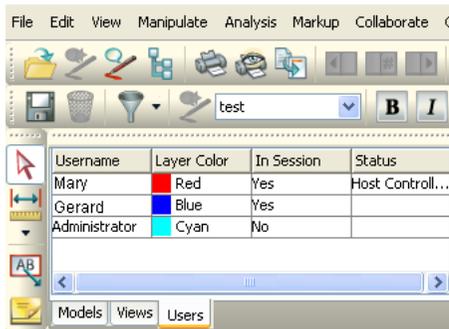
# Real-Time Collaboration

The real-time collaboration option enables multiple users to review files interactively and simultaneously, thereby shortening the review process for documents.

Participants in a Collaboration Session assume different roles. Each Collaboration Session has a Host, a Controller and one or more users. These participants have varying privileges during the Collaboration Session.

## Collaboration User Tree

When you are in a Collaboration Session, the bar on the left-hand side of the screen displays the **Users** tab, in addition to the tabs displayed when you are normally viewing a file. The **Users** tab displays the **Username**, the **Layer Color** representing the user, the **In Session** value and the user **Status**.



## The Host

The person who initiates the Collaboration Session is automatically the acting Host and Controller by default. The Host and Controller are not always the same person. The acting Host can assign another user to be the Host by selecting **Assign Host** from the **Collaborate** menu.

The Host is the only one who can save the Session Markup. When initiating a Collaboration Session, the Host can specify the Markup to open; the host can also open a Markup file during a session. The Host can invite other users to join the Collaboration Session during the session or at initiation of the session.

# The Controller

The **Controller** is the person who controls the base file's view during the Collaboration Session. Other participants in the Collaboration Session can choose between displaying or hiding the Controller's View changes.

When a session is initiated, the Controller is also the Host. The Controller can change the base file anytime during the Collaboration Session. However, when the Controller is no longer the Host, opening a new file has to be approved by the acting Host.

At any time during a session, a participant who is not an Observer can request control of a Collaboration Session.

## Lock

Any user who is not the Controller of the Collaboration Session can choose to display the Controller's View modifications on the base file and the other participants' modifications on the Markup file made during the Collaboration Session. To do so, from the **Collaborate** menu, select **Lock View to Presenter**, or from the Collaborate status bar, click **Lock View to Presenter** .

When you lock your view, the file displayed will have the same Configuration options the Controller has set in the **Configure** menu.

**Note:** For all users, except for the Controller, view options are disabled.

To unlock your view from the presenter's, from the **Collaborate** menu, again select **Lock View to Presenter**, or from the Collaborate status bar, click **Unlock View to Presenter** .

## Observer

Observers can take part in a Collaboration Session but cannot create Markup entities. They can observe and make comments in the Chat window. The Host can designate a user as an Observer when he invites him to the Collaboration Session. A user can also decide to take part as an Observer in the Collaboration Session by selecting **Observer** in the Join Session dialog box. There can be more than one Observer during a Collaboration Session.

# Open a File

The Controller is the only user who can open a file during a Collaboration Session.

To open a URL, from the **File** menu, select **Open URL**.

To open a local file, from the **File** menu, select **Open Local File**.

The **File Open** dialog box appears, letting you specify the file to open.

When AutoVue Web Version is integrated with a Document Management System (DMS), clicking **Open URL** opens a dialog box that lets you view a DMS file. You can work on this file opened through **Open URL** during the Collaboration Session. When the Host opens a URL, he or she is prompted to save the Session Markup from the Collaboration Session that was in session. When the Controller opens a URL, the Host still owns the Collaboration Session and is the only one who can save the Session Markup.

## Pointer

The **Pointer**  is the cross-hair marker the Controller uses to point to a specific place in the file.

## Session Information

The **Session Information** option is available from the **Collaborate** menu during a Collaboration Session. It displays the **Session Subject** (the name assigned to the Collaboration Session), the **Session ID**, the name of the base file viewed, the **Host** and the list of users participating.

## Session Markup

This is the Markup file created during the Collaboration Session. All participants can add Markup entities to the Session Markup file.

**Note:** Only the Host can save the Session Markup. **Save** and **Save As** are disabled for all other users.

# Show Tracker

The **Show Presenter Window** option in the **Collaborate** menu is available to any user whose view is set to unlocked. When you select **Show Tracker** from the **Collaborate** menu, the **Presenter Window** appears displaying a bird's eye view of the base file viewed and the Markup changes done during the Collaboration Session.

When you use **Show Presenter Window**, you can simultaneously track the Controller's base file view changes and everyone's markup changes in the **Presenter Window** while your main window display remains unaffected by anyone's modifications. It is like having a locked view and an unlocked view on hand at the same time.

# Collaboration Session

The **Collaborate** menu provides you with a means to initiate a Collaboration Session or join an existing session. When you initiate a Collaboration Session, a session object is created on the server and you are the Host and Controller of the session. The Host owns the Session Markup and is the only one who can save it and open an existing Markup. The Host can also invite other users during a session.

## Initiating a Collaboration Session

When you initiate a Collaboration Session, a session object is created on the server. The session object is maintained for the duration of the Collaboration Session. When you initiate a session from View mode, you are the Host and the Controller of the session.

- 1 From the **Collaborate** menu, select **Start Collaboration Session**. The Initiate Session dialog box appears.
- 2 In the **Session Subject** field, enter a session name.
- 3 If you want to open a Markup for the Collaboration Session, click **Browse**.  
**See *Opening a Markup While Initiating a Session***
- 4 Select **Public** if you want the Collaboration Session visible to others who may want to join the session.  
Select **Private** if you want the Collaboration Session only visible to the participants.
- 5 If you want to set a password for the Collaboration Session, enter a **Password**, then enter it again to **Confirm**.

**Note:** If you selected **Private** and chose not to set password, when you click **OK**, a confirmation dialog box appears asking if you are sure you do not want to set a password.

- 6 From the Users list, select the users that you want to invite.

**Note:** The Users list shows all users connected to the AutoVue server

- 7 Click **Add**.

The user you selected appears in the Invited list.

**Note:** To remove a user, select the user from the Invited list and click **Remove**.

- 8 To designate a user as an **Observer**, select the check box under **Invited**.

- 9 Click **OK**.

AutoVue goes into **Collaboration** mode and the session is started. The user or users that are invited receive a tooltip notification that he or she has been invited to join the session. The notification message indicates Session Name, File and Initiator.

## Changing a User's Layer Color of a Session

- 1 In the Initiate Session dialog box, click **Layer Color**.

The Layer Color dialog box appears.

- 2 Select a **Layer Color** from the list or select **Let user choose** if you want the user to choose their own color.

- 3 Click **OK**.

In the Initiate Session dialog box, the selected layers color appears beside the **Username** in the Invited list.

If you selected **Let user choose**, a custom color  appears beside the **Username**, indicating that the color can be changed **By User**.

## Adding New Users to a Session

- 1 In the Initiate Session dialog box, click **Add New**.

The Add User dialog box appears.

- 2 Enter **Username**.

- 3 Select **Observer** if you want to designate the user as an Observer.

- 4 Select a **Layer Color** from the list or select **Let user choose** if you want the user to choose their own color.

- 5 Click **OK**.

The new user is added to the Invited list in the Initiate Session dialog box.

**Note:** To add more than one user, repeat steps 1 to 5.

## Opening a Markup While Initiating a Session

- 1 From the **Collaborate** menu, select **Start Collaboration Session**.  
The Initiate Session dialog box appears.
- 2 Click **Browse**.  
The Markup Files dialog box appears.
- 3 In the Select Markup File(s) list, select the check box beside the Markup that you want to open.
- 4 To import a Markup file, click **Import**.  
The Select markup file to import dialog box appears.
- 5 Locate the file that you want to open.
- 6 Click **Open**.
- 7 Click **OK** in the Markup Files dialog box.
- 8 In the Initiate Session dialog box, select **Session Markup** if you want to open a Session Markup and keep the layer colors and markup entities from the Collaboration Session.
- 9 Click **OK**.  
The selected Markup appears in the Initiate Session dialog box.

## Opening a Markup During a Session

The Host can open Markups during a Collaboration Session. These Markups can be session markups created during Collaboration Sessions or any non-session Markup files.

- 1 During a Collaboration Session, from the **Markup** menu, select **Open**.  
A confirmation dialog box appears, prompting you to save the current Session Markup.
- 2 Click **Yes** or **No**.  
The Markup Files dialog box appears.
- 3 Select the check box beside the Markup that you want to open.
- 4 To import a Markup file, click **Import**.  
The Select Markup File to Import dialog box appears.
- 5 Locate the file that you want to open.
- 6 Click **Open**.

- 7 In the Markup Files dialog box, select **Session Markup** if you want to open a Session Markup and keep the layer colors and markup entities from the Collaboration Session.
- 8 Click **OK**.  
The selected Markup appears in the Collaboration window.

## Joining a Session

**Note:** If you do not want to receive any notifications to join Collaboration Sessions, from the **Collaborate** menu, select **Do Not Disturb**.

- 1 From the **Collaborate** menu, select **Join Collaboration Session**.  
The Join Session dialog box appears.
- 2 From the Session ID list, select the active session you want to join.
- 3 Enter the **Password** if the Host has set one.
- 4 If you just want to be an **Observer**, select the check box.
- 5 If you want to select a layer color, click **Layer Color**.  
The Layer Color dialog box appears.  
**Note:** The **Layer Color** is disabled if the Host did not select **Let user choose** when initiating the Collaboration Session or when you are invited to join the session.
- 6 Select a color from the list.
- 7 Click **OK**.
- 8 Click **OK** in the Join Session dialog box.  
You have joined the session.

## Inviting Users During a Session

- 1 From the **Collaborate** menu, select **Invite**.  
The Invite dialog box appears.
- 2 From the Online list, select the user or users that you want to invite.
- 3 Click **Add**.  
The user or users you selected appears in the Invited list.  
**Note:** You can add users that are going to join the session at a later time by clicking **Add New** and entering the **Username**.
- 4 Click **OK**.  
The users receive a tooltip notification that he or she has been invited to join the session.

## Removing Users from a Session

- 1 From the **Collaborate** menu, select **Invite**.  
The Invite dialog box appears.
- 2 From the Online list, select the user or users that you want to remove.
- 3 Click **Remove**.  
The user or users you selected appear in the Online list.
- 4 Click **OK**.  
The users receive a tooltip notification that he or she is no longer invited to the session.

## Assigning a Host During a Session

- 1 From the **Collaborate** menu, select **Assign Host**.  
The Assign Host dialog box appears.
- 2 From the Users list, select the user that you want to assign as host.
- 3 Click **OK**.  
The user you selected is now the host of the Collaboration Session.

## Passing Control of a Session to Another User

When you initiate a Collaboration Session, you are the default Controller of the session until you relinquish control to another user. You may grant control to another user any time during the session. Once you grant control to another user, all other users will automatically lock their views to the new Controller.

- 1 From the **Collaborate** menu, select **Pass Control**.  
The Grant Control dialog box appears.
- 2 From the Users list, select the user that you want to grant control to.
- 3 Click **OK**.  
The user you selected has control of the Collaboration Session.

## Saving a Session Markup

The Host owns the Session Markup and is the only one who can save it.

- 1 At the end of the Collaboration Session, from the **Markup** menu, select **Save As**.  
The Save Markup File As dialog box appears.
- 2 Enter the **Markup ID**.

**Note:** The **Markup Information** is optional.

- 3 Click **OK**.

The session Markup is saved and appears as a markup note entity with the control history and chat transcript.

## Closing a Session

Only a Host can close a Collaboration Session.

- 1 From the **Collaborate** menu, select **Close Collaboration Session**.  
The Save Markup dialog box appears prompting you to save the Session Markup.
- 2 Click **Yes**.  
All users are notified that the Collaboration Session is closed.

## Requesting Control of a Session

- 1 From the **Collaborate** menu, select **Request Control**.  
**Note:** From the Collaboration status bar, you can also click **Request**

**Control** .

The Controller receives a message that you have requested control.

- 2 The Controller clicks **OK**.  
You become the Controller of the Collaboration Session.  
**Note:** If the Controller does not respond within 10 seconds, control is automatically granted to the user who requested it.

## Tracking Changes

The **Show Presenter Window** option allows you to simultaneously track the Controller's base file view changes and everyone's markup changes while your markup file remains unchanged.

**Note:** You must be in an unlocked view state before selecting **Show Presenter Window**.

From the **Collaborate** menu, select **Show Presenter Window**.

You can now track changes without affecting your view.

## Unlocking a View

If you do not want to see the Controller's view changes, clear the Lock View.

- 1 From the **Collaborate** menu, and click **Lock View to Presenter**.  
The Lock View to Presenter option is deselected.  
**Note:** From the Collaborate status bar, you can also click **Unlock View** .
- 2 From the **Collaborate** menu, select **Show Presenter Window** if you want to simultaneously track the Controller's base file view changes and everyone's markup changes while your markup file remains unchanged.  
You can now track changes without affecting your view.  
**Note:** The **Show Presenter Window** option is only available when the view is unlocked.

## Locking a View

The **Lock View to Presenter** option allows you view changes the Controller is making. When you select the **Lock View to Presenter** option, you are also propagating your markup modifications to the other participants in the session.

**Note:** **Lock View to Presenter** is the default for all participants in a session.

- 1 From the **Collaborate** menu, select **Lock View to Presenter**  
**Note:** From the Collaborate status bar, you can also click **Lock View to Presenter** .
- The **Lock View to Presenter** option is highlighted.

## Viewing Session Information

- 1 From the **Collaborate** menu, select **Session Information**.  
The Session Information dialog box appears displaying the **Session Subject**, **Session ID**, **File Name**, **Host**, and **Users** of the session.
- 2 Click **OK**.

## Leaving a Session

Only a Host can close a Collaboration Session. All other participants can leave a Collaboration Session and rejoin at a later time if it is still in session.

From the **Collaborate** menu, select **Leave Collaboration Session**.

The other participants are notified that you left the Collaboration Session and AutoVue returns to View mode.

# Chat Window

The **Chat Window**, is a tool you can use to communicate with other users. You send each other messages via the Chat Window. The Chat Window is also useful in giving you Collaboration Session updates such as which users are present and which users have joined or left the session.

At the end of the Collaboration Session, a transcript of the Chat Window is saved as a **Note** entity along with the Markup as the Collaboration Session Markup file. The **Note** entity contains session information such who the Host was, who was invited and session time and duration.

The Chat Window contains these menu options:

Menu	Option	Description
File	Send Message	Sends text messages to other users.
	Print	Prints the contents of the Chat window.
	Quit	Closes the Chat window.
Edit	Copy	Copy text from the Chat window.
	Clear	Clears all the text in the Chat window.
	Find Text	Searches for text in the Chat window.
	Select All	Selects the entire text in the Chat window.
Options	Users	Displays the users in the Collaboration Session.

## Sending a Message to Selected Users

- From the **Collaborate** menu, select **Show Chat Window**.  
The Chat dialog box appears.  
**Note:** From the Collaborate status bar, you can also click **Show Chat Window** .
- Select **Selected users**.  
A list of **Users** appear in the Chat dialog box.
- Under **Users**, select the user or users that you want to send the message to.

**Note:** To select more than one user, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.

4 In the **Send Message to** field, enter your message.

5 Click **Send**.

The private message is sent to the selected users of the Collaboration Session.

## Sending a Message to All Users

1 From the **Collaborate** menu, select **Show Chat Window**.

The Chat dialog box appears.

**Note:** From the Collaborate status bar, you can also click **Show Chat Window** .

2 Select **All Users**.

3 In the **Send Message to** field, enter your message.

4 Click **Send**.

The message is sent to all users in the Collaboration Session.

---

# Feedback

Oracle products are designed according to your needs. We would appreciate your feedback, comments or suggestions. Contact us by fax, e-mail or telephone. There is a feedback button on our Web page that activates an easy-to-use feedback form. Let us know what you think.

## General Inquiries

**Telephone:** +1 514-735-3219

**Fax:** (514) 735-6440

**E-mail:** [info@cimmetry.com](mailto:info@cimmetry.com)

**Web Site:** <http://www.oracle.com/applications/autovue/index.html>

## Sales Inquiries

**Telephone:** +1 514-735-3219 or 1-800-361-1904

**Fax:** (514) 735-6440

**E-mail:** [sales@cimmetry.com](mailto:sales@cimmetry.com)

## Customer Support

**Telephone:** +1 514-735-9941

**Web Site:** <http://www.cimmetry.com/support>

